Martine BOCCANFUSO Marc EMILE

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer 3.61

CORPORATE EDITION



Copyright © 1996-2004 Axialis Software – All Rights Reserved http://www.axialis.com

Table Of Contents

| INTRODUCING, LICENSE | 1 |
|--|----|
| What is Professional Screen Saver Producer? | 2 |
| User License Agreement - Corporate Edition | 3 |
| Acknowledgements | 4 |
| System Requirements | 5 |
| GETTING STARTED (QUICK TUTORIALS) | 7 |
| What is a Screen Saver? | 8 |
| Tutorial 1 - Create a Sprite Screensaver | 11 |
| Lesson 1.1 - Creating the new project | 11 |
| Lesson 1.2 - Defining the background | 13 |
| Lesson 1.3 - Adding a static sprite | 14 |
| Lesson 1.4 - Adding a moving sprite | 16 |
| Lesson 1.5 - Adding an animated sprite | 18 |
| Lesson 1.6 - Using collision effects | 20 |
| Lesson 1.7 - Defining a background music | 22 |
| Lesson 1.8 - Saving the project | 22 |
| Lesson 1.9 - Compliing the screensaver | 20 |
| Lesson T. 10 - Credning an install package | 27 |
| Tutorial 2 - Create a Slideshow Screensaver | 33 |
| Lesson 2.1 - Creating the new project | 33 |
| Lesson 2.2 - Defining the background | 34 |
| Lesson 2.3 - Adding the photos | 35 |
| Lesson 2.4 - Specifying alspidy settings and transitions | 38 |
| Lesson 2.5 - Defining a background music | 40 |
| Lesson 2.0 - Saving the project | 41 |
| Lesson 2.7 - Compliing the screensaver | 42 |
| | 40 |
| Tutorial 3 - Create a Flash® Screensaver | 51 |
| Lesson 3.1 - Creating the new project | 51 |
| Lesson 3.2 - Denning the Dackground | JZ |
| Lesson 3.4 Specifying display setting: | 55 |
| Lesson 3.5 Saving the project | 55 |
| Lesson 3.6 - Compiling the screensgyer | 56 |
| Lesson 3.7 - Creating an install package | 60 |
| | |
| HOW TO PROCEDURES | 67 |
| How to quickly create a sprite screensaver | 68 |
| How to quickly create a slideshow screensaver | 69 |
| How to quickly create a Flash® screensaver | 70 |
| How to quickly create a video screensaver | 71 |
| How to create a simple "bouncing logo" screensaver | 72 |
| How to work efficiently with Photoshop® | 73 |

How to create a limited demo/shareware screensaver...

How to add a RSS reader in a screensaver...

76

78

| How to customize a screensaver icon | 80 |
|--|----------|
| How to customize a screensaver illustration image | 82 |
| How to install a SCR screensaver on a computer | 84 |
| How to quietly install a screensaver on a computer | 85 |
| How to install a SCR screensaver on a computer How to quietly install a screensaver on a computer | 84 85 |

CREATING SCREEN SAVERS 87

| Create a Sprite Based Screen Saver | 88 |
|--|-----|
| Create a sprite based screen saver project | 88 |
| Adjust general display properties | 88 |
| Add new sprites in the project | 89 |
| Change the sprite position | 90 |
| Change the sprite size | 91 |
| Change Motion, Type and Speed | 92 |
| Randomly change the sprite motion path | 92 |
| Add sprite collision effects | 93 |
| Add sprite collision sounds | 93 |
| Randomize position and speed at runtime | 94 |
| Create a transparent sprite | 95 |
| Specify sprite type | 95 |
| Save sprite image in a project | 96 |
| Duplicate sprites in a project | 96 |
| Import/Export sprites from the project | 96 |
| Customize the screen saver background | 97 |
| Add a background music | 98 |
| Add a movie or animation | 99 |
| Save the project (SSP file) | 101 |
| Test the screen saver full screen | 102 |
| Compile a screen saver file | 102 |
| Compile an installable package | 102 |
| Create a Slide Show Based Screen Saver | 103 |
| Create a Slide Show Based Screen Saver Project | 103 |
| Create slide show based screen saver project | 103 |
| Adjust general properties | 104 |
| Add new slides in the project | 104 |

| Cre | eate a Flash® Based Screen Saver | 115 |
|-----|---------------------------------------|-----|
| (| Compile an installable package | 114 |
| (| Compile a screen saver file | 113 |
| ٦ | Test the screen saver full screen | 113 |
| S | Save the project (SSP file) | 113 |
| / | Add a movie or animation | 111 |
| / | Add a default background music | 110 |
| (| Customize the screen saver background | 109 |
| [| Display the slide full screen | 109 |
| / | Add a slide specific sound | 108 |
| (| Customize slide display duration | 108 |
| (| Customize transition effect | 108 |
| (| Change the slide size | 108 |
| 5 | Save a slide in a project | 107 |
| [| Display/change slide information | 107 |
| (| Change slide image pathname | 107 |
| / | Arrange the slide sequence | 106 |
| | | 104 |

| Create a Flash® Based Screen Saver | 115 |
|------------------------------------|-----|
|------------------------------------|-----|

| Create slide show based screen saver project | 115 |
|--|-------|
| Adjust general properties | 116 |
| Specify the Flash® movie | 116 |
| Allow to the user interact with the Flash animation | 119 |
| Change the Flash® file pathname | 119 |
| Save the Flash ${ m I}$ file in the project | 120 |
| Adjust the Flash® movie display size | 120 |
| Adjust the Flash® movie position on screen | 120 |
| Customize the screen saver background | 121 |
| Specific FSCommands for the Screen Saver | 121 |
| Specific Flash® variables for screensavers with activation | 122 |
| Save the project (SSP file) | 123 |
| Test the screen saver full screen | 123 |
| Compile a screen saver file | 124 |
| Compile an installable package | 124 |
| Create Video Based Screen Saver | 125 |
| Create a Video Based Screen Saver | 125 |
| Create Video based screen saver project | 125 |
| Adjust general properties | 120 |
| Adjusi general properties Add/remove video movies in the playlist | 120 |
| Change the playlist order | 120 |
| Save the movie files in the project | 129 |
| A diret the movie divolations | 130 |
| Adjust the Florb® mayie position on screen | 130 |
| | 130 |
| Cusionize the project (SCD file) | 131 |
| Save me project (SSP me) | 101 |
| | 132 |
| Compile a screen saver file Compile an installable package | 132 |
| | 102 |
| Compile a Windows® screen saver (SCR file) | 134 |
| Compile a Windows® screen saver (SCR file) | 134 |
| Step 1 - Specify a filename and location | 134 |
| Step 2 - Specify a description, configure a RSS reader | 135 |
| Step 3 - Customize icon and dialog box image | 137 |
| Step 4 - Specify the splash screen parameters | 140 |
| Step 5 - Specify the preview parameters | 141 |
| Step 6 - Compilation Summary | 143 |
| Compilation | 143 |
| Compile an installable screen saver file (EXE) | 144 |
| Step 1 - Specify the filename and location of the install package | 144 |
| Step 2 - Specify the installation properties, advanced customization | 145 |
| Step 3 - Specify the User License Agreement | 150 |
| Step 4 - Specify the screensaver filename and description | 151 |
| Step 5 - Customize icon and dialog box image | 153 |
| Step 6 - Specify the splash screen parameters | 155 |
| Step 7 - Specify the preview parameters | 156 |
| Step 8 - Specify an activation code (create a limited version) | 157 |
| Step 9 - Compilation Summary | 159 |
| Compilation | 160 |
| Command-line options | 160 |
| Working with the Photoshan® plug-in | A.L.A |
| | 104 |
| | 104 |

| Install the Photoshop® Plug-in | 164 |
|--|---|
| Use the Photoshop® Plug-in | 165 |
| Generate Activation Codes | 168 |
| Information on Activation Codes | 168 |
| Generate Activation Codes | 169 |
| WORKING WITH THE AXIALIS LIBRARIAN | 171 |
| What is the Librarian? | 172 |
| Configure the Librarian | 174 |
| Show and hide the Librarian Window | 174 |
| Change the Librarian position on screen | 174 |
| Change the Librarian folder location | 174 |
| Working with the LibrarianOpen an item in the librarianOpen an item full screenEdit an item with an External programToggle the auto full screen optionRename one or more itemsSend media items via emailSearch itemsDelete itemsPreview an item in the librarianRestore previously deleted items in the LibrarianEmpty the Deleted Items folderCreate a new folderImport filesExport filesSelect filesChange the item displayPrint the actual folderDisplay a grid in the detailed listShow info tooltipsDisplay the item propertiesChange a folder iconShow folders | 175 175 175 176 176 176 176 176 177 177 178 178 178 178 178 178 179 179 179 179 179 179 180 180 180 181 |
| Add Items to The Librarian | 182 |
| Add items to the librarian from the Explorer Document | 182 |
| Add an opened document to the librarian | 182 |
| Add items using the Import function | 182 |
| WORKING WITH THE AXIALIS MEDIA FILE EXPLORER | 183 |
| Using the Axialis Media File Explorer | 184 |
| Create a new Explorer window | 184 |
| Explorer Functions | 185 |
| Display the item properties | 185 |
| Search media files on the computer | 185 |
| Browse media files full screen | 185 |
| Print a folder content as thumbnail with preview | 186 |
| Move or copy media files | 186 |

| Add a selection of files to the Librarian | 188 |
|--|--|
| Working with media files Supported Media Types Open a media file Print a media file Change display mode Display full screen Copy a media file to the Clipboard | 189 189 190 191 192 192 193 |
| Features Specific to the Image Files Save an image to another file format Resize an image Crop an image Change the color depth of an image | 194 194 194 195 196 |
| CUSTOMIZING THE APPLICATION | 199 |
| Customizing Toolbars and the Librarian Customize the main toolbar Show/hide the Toolbars Show and hide the Librarian Window Change the Librarian position on screen Change the Librarian folder location | 200 200 201 202 202 202 |
| Changing the Program Preferences Options in the General Tab User Interface options Options in the Toolbars Tab Options in the Media Types Tab Options in the Librarian Tab Options in the Images Tab Options in the Images Tab Options in the Movies Tab Options in the Temporary Files Tab | 203 203 204 205 205 206 206 206 207 208 |
| MISCELLANEOUS FEATURES, TIPS, UNINSTALLATION Quick-open a file using the Recently Used Bar Manage favorite files Paste an image from another program to a project Paste an image as a new document Desktop Reorganization Acquire a new image from a Twain device Uninstall or repair the application | 209 210 210 211 212 212 212 213 213 |
| REGISTERING, UPGRADING, ONLINE FEATURES Online Registration using Internet Upgrade the application using Internet Online Customer Service on Internet Contact Axialis Software Team | 215 216 218 219 220 |
| INDEX | 221 |

CHAPTER 1 Introducing, License

In this chapter

- What is Professional Screen Saver Producer?
 - User License Agreement
 - Acknowledgements
 - System Requirements

What is Professional Screen Saver Producer?

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer is a powerful tool designed to create Windows® screensavers. It has a fully integrated workspace that permits you to work efficiently and create professional screen savers in minutes.

What kind of Screen Savers can I produce?

Almost all kind of screen savers based on sprite animations (a sprite is an animated and/or moving image - see the "Dancing Balls" sample on right). This new version let you also create screen savers based on Shockwave Flash (no limit to your imagination!), Image Slide Shows (display your favorite photos) and Movies (QuickTime, Mpeg, AVI, RealMedia...).

You compile and produce Windows 95/98/ME/2000/XP SCR compatible files with Control Panel preview. Several options are available: Sprite collisions at different levels with sounds; MIDI, MP3 or MOD/S3M/XM Background music support; Several Background effects; AVI, MPEG, QT Video Sequences support; FLI, FLC, GIF Animations support; Compilation with image compression; Customizable screen saver About dialog box, and more...

The screen savers you'll produce will support all video configurations (screen size and color depth). Now the program supports images and icons with alpha channel (aka smooth transparency). This will permit you to create beautiful screensavers at professional quality level. At least this new version permits to create demo/limited versions of your screensavers with unlock feature. This is very interesting to distribute and sell your screensavers. A powerful built-in module permits you to generate unlock codes.

A WYSIWYG Editor

To let you be more productive, we have created an advanced WYSIWYG screen saver editor with full Drag & Drop support. WYSIWYG means "*What You See Is What You Get*". No surprise at compilation, your final screen saver is strictly identical.

An Ergonomic Integrated Suite of Tools

A professional tool must be Powerful and Easy to Use. That's why we have created an intuitive fully integrated workshop interface. All is visible and easy to access in the main window: A built in dockable media files librarian to manage your files, a powerful explorer with thumbnail preview to explore your hard disks or CD, an ergonomic Explorer® like toolbar with a Recently Used Files bar, a multi-document support, a WYSIWYG editor interface, and more...

The application has been designed to be the most ergonomic as possible. An action can always be done using several methods. For example, to add a new sprite in a screen saver project you can use a <u>standard</u> <u>dialog box</u>, the <u>Mouse by Drag & Drop</u> or the <u>Clipboard by Copy/Paste</u>. With Screen Saver Producer you work the way you like!

A Powerful Built-in Librarian

A powerful built-in librarian let you easily manage all your media and screen saver projects files. This is a dockable window (which can be hidden) where you can store, move, copy and extract all the files you're using in your work (images, video, sounds and music). Very easy to use: Double click to open a file in a window (even animations, music, video...), use Drag & Drop to add it in a project. And best of all, you can find a specific file using a powerful search feature.

User License Agreement - Corporate Edition

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Read this License Agreement carefully before using this Software. BY USING THIS SOFTWARE IN ANY WAY YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ, UNDERSTAND AND AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THESE TERMS, DO NOT USE THIS SOFTWARE IN ANY WAY, AND PROMPTLY RETURN IT OR DELETE ANY COPIES OF THIS SOFTWARE IN YOUR POSSESSION.

LICENSE GRANT

Axialis Software ("AXIALIS") grants you a non-exclusive license to use this software, and any associated documentation ("The Software"), as indicated herein. If you have purchased a Single User License, one copy of the Software may be installed and used, for internal use only, on a single computer. The Software is in "use" on a single computer when it has been loaded into temporary memory (i.e. RAM) or installed into permanent memory (hard disk or other device) of that computer. If you have purchased a Multiple User License (you specified several copies of the software when you purchased it), the Software may be installed and used, for internal purposes only, on the number of computers authorized at the time of purchase.

You MAY: (a) redistribute compiled Screen Savers for commercial purpose; (b) make a copy of the software for archival purpose only; (c) install the Software on another computer only if you change of workstation. In such a case you must uninstall the software from the previous workstation.

RESTRICTIONS

You MAY NOT: (a) copy and distribute the Software or any portion of it; (b) sublicense, lease, rent, or transfer this Software to another; (c) cause or permit reverse engineering, disassembly, decompilation or alteration of this Software; (d) remove any product identification, copyright notices, or other notices or proprietary restrictions from this Software; (e) copy the documentation accompanying the software.

TERM

This License is effective until terminated. You may terminate it at any time by destroying the Software, together with all copies thereof. This License will also terminate if you fail to comply with any term or condition of this Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy the Software, together with all copies thereof.

COPYRIGHT/OWNERSHIP

This Software and its source code are proprietary products of AXIALIS and are protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws. The Software is licensed and not sold. You acquire only the right to use the Software and do not acquire any rights, express or implied, in the Software other than those specified in this License.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES

The Software is supplied "AS IS". AXIALIS disclaims all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The user must assume the entire risk of using the Software.

DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES

AXIALIS assumes no liability for damages, direct or consequential, which may result from the use of the Software, even if AXIALIS has been advised of the possibility of such damages. Any liability of the seller will be limited to refund the purchase price.

Acknowledgements

Icons and Images used in the program

Thanks to these great icon artists for giving us permission to include some of their icons and images in the program (toolbar buttons, icons, dialog illustration...):

- . Marvilla (midnight@yifan.net website: Iconica).
- . Foood (foood@foood.net website: Foood.net).
- . Everaldo (everaldo@everaldo.com website: Everaldo.com).

Sample Icons

Thanks to Yazoo for giving us permission to include some of its smiley icons in the "Internet" sample screensavers. You are free to use the icons from Yazoo for private/non commercial use only. Please read *Yazoo-read-me.txt* file (located in Librarian "Sprites" folder) to get more info. Visit http://www.wbchug.com for more free Icons. Visit http://www.wbc-designs.com for a list of services.

Sample Loop Sounds

Thanks to Alexander Lau from Loopheads Soundware for giving us permission to include some of its Loop sounds in the sample screensavers. Loop sounds are short sounds which can be played in loop to create an endless music. Contact Loopheads if using these sounds commercially. To get more info about Loopheads visit their website: http://www.loopheads.com



The sounds have been resampled to low quality (12.000 kHz, 8 Bits,

Stereo) for demo purpose. To get CD Quality versions (44.100 kHz, 16 Bits, Stereo) purchase Loopkit Pro v1.0 CD which includes over 1200 copyright/royalty-free sound loops and samples at: http://www.loopkit.com

Translations and Help Fixes

Thanks to the following persons who helped us on translations and help fixes:

- . Dmitry Yerokhin (erodim@mail.ru) Russian portions
- . Giorgio Brausi (vbcorner@vbcorner.net website www.vbcorner.net) Italian portions
- . Juan Carlos Hernández Pazos (informes@datafox.com website www.datafox.com) Spanish portions
- . Marcus Vinícius Portuguese portions
- . Mark Budd (mark@siteworx.co.za) English context help fixes
- . Richard Bol (r bol@quicknet.nl website www.rbol.nl) Dutch portions
- . Stefen C. Weber (translation@shannon.de website www.shannon.de) German portions

Compression Support

Thanks to Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler for writing the fantastic and free ZLIB compression/decompression library which is used in Axialis products. You can visite the official ZLIB Web page at: <u>http://www.cdrom.com/pub/infozip/zlib</u>

PNG Support

Thanks to the creators of the PNG graphic file format and its related source code. You can visite the official PNG Web page at: <u>http://www.cdrom.com/pub/png</u>

JPEG Support

Thanks to Thomas G. Lane and the Independent JPEG Group for the JPEG graphic file format and its source code. You can visite the official JPEG Web page at: <u>http://www.ijg.org</u>

System Requirements

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer has been designed to work with Microsoft Windows® 95, 98, ME, NT4, 2000 and XP.

Minimum

- Pentium® class CPU 350 Mhz
- 65536 color video card 800x600
- 64 Mb RAM
- Microsoft Windows® 95 (with ComCtl32 v4.72+) or NT 4.0 SP4

Recommended

- Pentium® 3/4 or AMD Athlon 500 Mhz or more
- True Color Video Card (24 or 32 bits 16,8 M colors) 1024x768
- 128 Mb RAM
- Microsoft Windows® ME/2000/XP or more

CHAPTER 2

Getting Started (Quick Tutorials)

In this chapter

- What is a Screensaver?
- Tutorial 1 Create a Sprite Screensaver
- Tutorial 2 Create a Slideshow Screensaver
 - Tutorial 3 Create a Flash® Screensaver ■

What is a Screen Saver?

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer is a powerful tool designed to create Windows® screen savers. But what is a screen saver (also written in one word: "screensaver")? A screen saver is an animated image that is activated on a personal computer display when no user activity has been sensed for a certain time. The original purpose of a screen saver was to prevent burn-in (the burning of an image into the phosphor inside the cathode ray tube after hours of the same image being displayed). In fact, today's CRT/LCD display technology makes burn-in unlikely except under extreme conditions. The prefect screensaver is the black screen... a bit boring, huh? Many people get screen savers so that something interesting is on the screen when they make a pause. Screensavers are also a good way to promote a company or a product.

Windows® comes with built-in screen savers that you can select. If you purchase your computer with the operating system already installed, a screen saver may have been selected for you. Also, many screensavers can be downloaded from specific. Of course, the best way is to create your own and express your talent...

A good screensaver must have the following characteristics:

- A dark background or scene This is to save power consumed by the display.
- Moving objects or scene This is to avoid pixel burning. Fixed objects must be dark.
- Slow motion The scene must be appeasing.
- Silent If you add sounds, use low-level ones and/or cool music.
- Sensitive It must stop on any user action (mouse move, click, keyboard hit...).

What is a Sprite based screensaver?

A sprite is an animated or fixed object which moves or is static on screen. As the goal of a screensaver is to save screen pixels, it is better to use moving sprites (see "bouncing balls" example). The sprites can move on screen, be static, be animated (a spinning ball for example, composed of several images), bounce on the edge of the screen, collide with other sprites and more... The Sprite based screensaver is the most commonly used.

What is a Flash based screensaver?

Macromedia Flash® is a powerful product which permits to create sophisticated vector animations for the Web. SWF (Macromedia® Flash®) is the file format used by Macromedia Flash® to deliver graphics, animation and sound over the Internet. These techniques are rapidly changing the way we play, work, or just browse online.

What are vector graphics? Vector graphics, which manipulate coordinates and mathematical formulas rather than pixel-by-pixel images, produce graphics files that are one-tenth the size of bitmaps. Additionally, SWF can deliver animation, rich colors, sound, and interaction. To view a Flash animation, the user must download and install the Flash® player. This is automatically done when he visits a website using Flash®. As a result, over 95% of Internet users can now view SWF content: millions of people have downloaded the Flash® player for their browser. Flash® is a great format to create gorgeous screensavers.

What is a Slideshow based screensaver?

A slideshow is a sequence of full screen images, each one loading the next. Each image is called a "slide". Each slide is displayed on screen for a specified period of time. When this period is over, the next slide is displayed using a possible transition effect (cut, roll, fade...). A background music can be added as well as

a startup video sequence. This kind of screensaver is great to display your vacation photos or promote a company slogan for example.

What is a Video based screensaver?

A video screensaver permits to display a list of video clips full screen in sequence. This kind of screensaver is less used but could be useful to display a company advertisement clip for example.

What are the characteristics of a Windows® screen saver?

First of all, a screensaver is a program. It is in fact an executable file which has the SCR extension (not EXE). Windows® SCR screensavers can be executed in 3 modes:

- Full Screen mode This is the default mode. If you launch a SCR file from Windows Explorer, it will display full screen.
- **Configure mode** Specify "/**C**" of right-click on the file using Windows Explorer and select "Configure". The screensaver built-in dialog box opens and permits you to adjust various settings.
- **Preview mode** This mode is reserved to Windows[®]. When launched in this mode, the screensaver displays in small size in the Windows Display Properties dialog box (see below).

SCR files can be located anywhere on your hard disks but we recommend you to copy them in your Windows system directory (see below how to install a screensaver).

How to install a screensaver on a Windows® computer?

If an install procedure is provided with the screensaver, just install it launching the procedure. When a screensaver is distributed as a simple SCR file, You have to follow this procedure to install it on a computer:

- 1. Copy the SCR file in your system folder. This folder vary with Windows version:
- Windows XP/NT/2000 C:\WINNT\SYSTEM32
- Windows 95/98/ME C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM
- **2.** Right-click in the Windows Desktop background and select "Properties". A dialog box opens. Select the "Screen Saver" tab:

| hemes Desktop | Screen Saver | Appearance | Settings |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| | 195 525 185 585 | 0 | |
| 0 | | | |
| | 1272 | | |
| Screen vaver Bouncing Logo | (glow) | V Sejting | p: Pre <u>v</u> iew |
| <u>W</u> ait 1 🗘 | minutes 🛄 On | resume, displa | y Welcome screen |
| Monitor power | To adjust mon click Power. | itor power settir | ngs and save energy, |
| | | | |

- 3. Select your screensaver in the list (●). (it should appear in this list if you copied it in the correct folder). The screensaver appears in the **Preview** screen (②).
- 4. You can adjust the screensaver settings or display it full screen (3).
- 5. When all done, click **OK** (④)

How to uninstall a screensaver?

If an uninstall procedure is provided with the screensaver, just uninstall it launching the procedure. When a screensaver is distributed as a simple SCR file, you have to locate the SCR file and delete it. You can also choose another screensaver (or simply specify "None") in the above list (**1**).

Tutorial 1 - Create a Sprite Screensaver

Lesson 1.1 - Creating the new project

In this lesson we'll create a new sprite based screensaver project and take a look at the editor window.

Create the project

 In the menu, choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project, a dialog box opens. Select the "Sprite Based Screen Saver" type in the list and click Next. A second dialog box opens:

| | Screen Saver Information |
|-----|--|
| | You can specify Screep Saver and Arthor information below: |
| | |
| | Screen Saver |
| | <u>I</u> ftle: |
| | |
| | Description : |
| - | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 1.4 | Author |
| J | Mane: |
| | Marc contre |
| | Copyright: |
| ~ | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights reserved |
| | Therein the second |

 Specify the Screensaver Title: "Tutorial1". Also specify your own Description, Author Name, Copyright (1) information and click Next.

<u>REMARK</u>: Click on the context help button (2) to get more information on a specific area in the dialog box.

A quick tour of the screensaver project editor window

3. A new project window opens:

| Adulis Professional Screen Sar Fie Oracity Adults Parottes 1 | ver Producer 3.6 few Window Help here: O Duburan X C D | 🔍 Search + 🥮 Favorites + 😡 Cégiley + 📓 🕴 | × |
|--|--|--|---------------|
| Recently Used | | • | |
| Klevrin X Provide Fies Annotorie Stadysunds Stadys | Trutorial - [Stopped] | | × |
| | | Tutoriali (undefine | o 28610 to 13 |

- 4. In the **Application window** (**1**) you see the **menu** and the **main toolbar**. This toolbar can be customized by double-clicking or right-clicking on it. When you select a command in this menu or main toolbar, it acts on the selected item or window.
- 5. In the Librarian (2) you can select the folder that contains the media files (images, animations, music, sounds) that you'll use in your project (3).
- 6. The **Project document window** is named "Tutorial1" (④). The application is multi-document enabled. It means that you can create or open several documents in the working area of the application. A local toolbar is located in the document window. If you click on a button in this toolbar (④), it acts on the selected item in the document window. This toolbar cannot be customized.
- 7. The **Document window** is divided in two parts. On the left side (**5**), you see the **list of sprites** included in the project (actually no sprite) as well as a Background properties element. Sprites you'll add in the project will be added in this list. Each sprite is placed in an invisible layer so that sprites on top of the list overlap sprites that are placed below. Sprite order can be rearranged by drag & drop (in the list) but the background element is always placed at the bottom.
- 8. On the right side (6), you see the editor area. Actually you see the default background (it can be customized). Also, this area is **WYSIWYG** enabled. It means "What You See Is What You Get". Each sprite is visible and moves in this area the same way it will move in the final screensaver. But that's not all. You can also modify the sprites in this area using your mouse. It is a real editor window, not only a preview window.

IMPORTANT: This editor window as well as all values used in the project (coordinates, speeds) are based on the following visible dimensions: 640x480: (0,0) in the upper-left corner and (639,479) in the lower-right corner.

9. At the bottom of the main window, you see some important informations about the project (mouse coordinates, sprite size...).

Lesson 1.2 - Defining the background

Change the background: Tiled image

- 1. In the WYSIWYG editor window, double-click (using the left button) or right-click and select "Properties" or choose Project/Screen Background menu command.
- 2. A Project Properties dialog box opens (Background tab is selected):

| ~ | Ten son Wal | losper | | ~ |
|-------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. | Pathname | nian/media file | s\images\backgr | sunds/wood04.jpg |
| de la | | Stretch | 😑 Center 🛛 🗨 | le |
| | Gradient | | | -3 |
| | From color. | | - | Vertical Reported |
| | To color: | | 4 | e Minor |
| | Solid Color | a | | |
| | Color | | ~ | |
| | Keep Scree | n Backgroun | đ | |
| | Unchar | vged 💮 25% | Darker 🛛 🗐 501 | Darker 📄 75% Darker |

- **3.** Actually, the "Gradient" background type is selected. Choose the **Image Wallpaper** option (**1**). The associated group is activated.
- 4. In the Pathname area (2), select the following image (using the [...] button): "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Media Files\Images\Backgrounds\Wood04.jpg".
- 6. In the same group, select the **Tiled** option (^S). This image must be used as a tiled wallpaper (the same image contains a seamless pattern that creates the illusion of an infinite background image when placed like tiles).

<u>REMARK</u>: Click on the context help button (6) to get more information on a specific area in the dialog box.

7. Click OK when done (4). The background of the project changes as follows:



Lesson 1.3 - Adding a static sprite

In this lesson, we'll add our first sprite in the project: a static sprite. It means that this sprite will not move on the screen. It is useful to add your company logo in a corner of the screen foe example. Also, we'll change its transparency value to create a watermark effect.

Add the sprite

- 1. In the Librarian window, select the "Media Files\Images\Sprites" folder (**1**). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the list below.
- Select the file "Axialis-logo-text.png" in the list (2) and use a mouse drag & drop to place the file in the middle of the edit area (3). The sprite is added in the project and displayed at scale 1:1 (see below).



Resize and position the sprite

- 3. Now we're going to resize the sprite and place it in the lower-right corner of the screen. First off, check that the project mode is "stopped". If not click on the **Stop Animation** button (④).
- 4. The sprite is displayed with a bounding box and resize eight handles (•). Select the handle that is located in the lower-right corner with the mouse and use drag & drop to resize the sprite. In the lower-left corner of the application window you see a real-time scale indicator. Adjust the size to [40% x 40%] moving the mouse and release the button when done.

<u>TIP</u>: You can use the SHIFT key to keep the proportions of the sprite while resizing. When you press the SHIFT key, the proportion is kept (same percent in width and height).

5. As the end-user screen will probably be larger than 640x480, the sprite exact position will change when the screensaver will be executed full screen. We want the sprite to be located and adjusted in the lower-right corner of the screen. That's why we'll change the hot spot relative position (aka. anchor point) of the sprite. By default, it is located in the center of the sprite [50% - 50%]. To be sure the sprite is adjusted in the lower-right corner, we'll specify the hot spot at [100% - 100%]. Double-click on the sprite in the list (①), see below. A dialog opens. In both Rel X and Rel Y zones, specify 100% (②). Click OK to apply (the sprite position change slightly on screen).



6. Using a mouse drag & drop (grab the sprite by pressing on an opaque region - a ball of the logo for example), move the sprite to the lower-right corner of the screen at location [630, 470] (3).

<u>TIPS</u>: To know the exact location of a sprite, look at the bottom of the main application window. On the right side of the status bar, you'll see a coordinate indicator (**TI**). Near this indicator is displayed the exact location of the sprite. You can finely adjust a sprite location by using the keyboard arrow keys. You can also specify the exact location by opening the Properties dialog box (**Alt+Enter**), select the **Size & Position** tab and set **X** and **Y** in the **Absolute Position** group.

Adjust sprite opacity and specify general information

7. We're almost done. Now we'll change the opacity of the sprite in order to show it as a watermark on screen. Double-click on the sprite in the list (**0**), see below.

| Sprite curtit | • | | |
|---|---|--|---------|
| State Enoge Walpaper Ba File "cilydoour | ciground sents and setter | 1411 | |
| Sprite Prop | er ties Moton Sounds & Collectra Annoticon Transport | ? × mr[Generd]Doope] | |
| | The image certains an Alpha Channel (sense | Ab transparency) An ajab colorest. An ajab color is an ablicual methodia for the maps. In enclodia for the maps. In enclodia for the maps. In enclodia for global. Ablicuation of global. | |
| | o versal Opporte: | IN Sport Abha Channel Bash geord other International Chancel International Chancel Inter | axialis |

- 6. A dialog opens. Select the Transparency tab. Using the Overall Opacity slider, specify 50% (2). Click OK to apply. The sprite is now displayed with a watermark effect (3).
- 7. The last operation to do is to specify some information in the sprite properties. This is a boring step but this should always be done to make future modifications easier. Double-click on the sprite in the list (①), see above. A dialog box opens, select the General tab. In the Name field, specify a short name for the sprite: "Watermark Logo". This name will be displayed in the sprite list. Also, specify a Description of the sprite in the field below.
- 8. Now that we've added our first sprite, we can take a look at the result full screen. Press F11 or click the Full Screen button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed full screen. Is the sprite well adjusted in the lower-right corner? Excellent! Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.

Lesson 1.4 - Adding a moving sprite

In this lesson, we'll add sprites that move on screen. We'll also learn how to configure the sprite to make it bounce on the screen borders.

Add and position the sprite

- 1. In the Librarian window, select the "Media Files\Images\Sprites" folder (**1**). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the list below.
- Select the file "Sphere-blue.png" in the list (2) and use a mouse drag & drop to put the file in the edit area (3). Place it in the upper-right corner of the screen at location [490, 100]. The sprite is added in the project and displayed at scale 1:1 (see below). Also, you can see it in the sprite list (4).

<u>TIPS</u>: To know the exact location of a sprite, look at the bottom of the main application window. On the right side of the status bar, you'll see a coordinate indicator (**TOP**). Near this indicator is displayed the exact location of the sprite. You can finely adjust a sprite location by using the keyboard arrow keys. You can also specify the exact location by opening the Properties dialog box (**Alt+Enter**), select the **Size & Position** tab and set **X** and **Y** in the **Absolute Position** group.



Set the sprite motion parameters

3. Now we're going to make the sprite move on screen. Double-click on the sprite in the list (**1**), see below. A dialog opens. Select the **Motion** tab if necessary.



- 4. Choose Straight Line and Bouncing on the edges of the screen options (2). The first option indicates the type of motion for this sprite. It will move in straight line. The second option we've set will make the sprite bounce each time it will encounter a screen border. Of this option is not set, the sprite continue its path disappearing under the screen border and reappearing on the opposite side.
- 5. Now we'll set the direction and speed of the sprite. We can do this by specifying 2 values: The Horizontal and Vertical speeds. By choosing these values (from -500 to +500) we can specify any speed and direction. For the horizontal speed, a negative value makes the sprite move left, a positive value makes it move right. For the vertical speed, a negative value makes the sprite move down, a negative value makes it move up.

Specify -100 in Horizontal speed and +100 in Vertical speed (3).

6. When done, click OK. The sprites does not move, nothing has visually changed. This is because the project is in "Stopped" state. The sprites are displayed at their original locations (with resize handles around the selected sprite. To see it move in the edit window, switch to "Play" mode by clicking on the Play/Pause button (④). Do you like what you see? Congratulations, you've made your very first screensaver!

<u>**REMARK**</u>: In "**play**" mode (④), the sprites are moving on screen but you cannot adjust them (size and position). You can select them by clicking on them while they're moving but you cannot change their original position and size. Return to "**Stopped**" mode to do so.

7. We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press F11 or click the Full Screen button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.

Set the sprite general information

8. Like we did in the previous lesson, the last operation to do is perform is to specify some information in the sprite properties. Double-click on the sprite in the list (1), see above. A dialog box opens, select the General tab. In the Name field, specify a short name for the sprite: "Blue Sphere". This name will be displayed in the sprite list. Also, specify a Description of the sprite in the field below.

Exercises

- Repeat the procedure with the image file "Sphere-green.png". Place it in the lower-left corner of the screen at location [150, 380]. Specify a straight line path bouncing on the edges of the screen. Specify horizontal speed to +100 and vertical speed to -100. Name this sprite "Green Sphere".
- Do the same exercise with the image file "Sphere-red.png". Place it in the upper-left corner of the screen at location [150,100]. Specify a straight line path bouncing on the edges of the screen. Specify horizontal speed to +100 and vertical speed to +100. Name this sprite "Red Sphere".
- Test your screensaver project full screen.

Lesson 1.5 - Adding an animated sprite

In this lesson, we'll add an animated sprite. It means that this sprite is composed of several frames that will be displayed in sequence to simulate an animation. In our case, this is a spinning ball. Note that there is no link between the animated and the motion properties of a sprite. An animated sprite can be static on screen.

Add and position the sprite

- First, be sure to be in "Stopped" mode. In the Librarian window, select the "Media Files\Images\Sprites" folder (1). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the list.
- Select the file "Ball-anim.png" in the list (2) and use a mouse drag & drop to put the file in the edit area (3). Place it in the upper-right corner of the screen at location [450, 320]. The sprite is added in the project and displayed at scale 1:1 (see below). Also, you can see it in the sprite list (3).



Animate the sprite

3. As you can see, this sprite is actually composed of 6 images placed on top of each others. This is what we call a **filmstrip**. Now we'll enter this information in the sprite properties to setup the animation. Double-click on the sprite in the list (**1**), see below. A dialog opens:



- Select the Animation tab if necessary. In the Number of Images zone specify 6 (2). In the Animation Speed zone specify 50 (3). The first value indicates the number of images in the filmstrip. The second value indicates the speed of the animation.
- 5. When done, click **OK**. The sprites is now displayed as a single image not a filmstrip) but it is not animated. This is because the project is in "Stopped" state. Click on the "Play" button (④) to see the ball spin.

Set the sprite motion parameters

6. Now we're going to make the sprite move on screen. Double-click on the sprite in the list (**1**), see below. A dialog opens. Select the **Motion** tab if necessary.

- Like you did for the previous sprites, choose Straight Line and Bouncing on the edges of the screen options. Also, specify -80 for Horizontal and -80 for Vertical values. Click OK when done.
- **8.** We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press **F11** or click the **Full Screen** button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.

Set the sprite general information

9. Like we did in the previous lesson, the last operation to do is perform is to specify some information in the sprite properties. Double-click on the sprite in the list (①), see above. A dialog box opens, select the General tab. In the Name field, specify a short name for the sprite: "Spinning Ball". This name will be displayed in the sprite list. Also, specify a Description of the sprite in the field below.

Lesson 1.6 - Using collision effects

In this lesson, we'll learn how to add collision effects to the screensaver. Actually the sprites overlap when they encounter each other, they do not collide. You can make them collide like balls on a pool table.

Set the collision options

1. First, be sure to be in "Stopped" mode. Double-click on the sprite "Blue Sphere" in the list (**1**), see below. A dialog opens:



2. Click on the Sound & Collision tab if necessary. Select "Level 1" in the Object Collision Level list (2). The application supports several collision levels. For example, if you set the blue and red balls to level 1, and if you set the green and spinning balls to level 2: blue and red balls will collide together but they won't collide with green and spinning balls. You can consider levels like invisible layers in which sprites are moving. The rule is simple: Two sprites must be in the same collision level to collide together.

IMPORTANT: Collision level are not related to sprite order in the project (ie. the order of sprites in the project list).

- 3. Select "Change path" in the Collision with another object option (^(S)). This option is mostly used. This permits to change the motion path of the object after the collision (like this is the case for 2 balls on a pool table for example).
- 4. When done, click OK. You changed the option for the blue ball.
- 5. Now, repeat the same procedure for green, red and spinning balls (④).
- 6. When all the collision settings are set, try your screensaver full screen (F11) or switch to "play" mode. Much more fun, isn't it?

Add sounds to collisions

7. You can add sounds when the sprites collide together. This could be a cool addition to your screensaver (don't add too much sounds though!). Double-click on the sprite "Spinning Ball" in the list (1), see below. A dialog opens:



- 8. Select the Sound & Collision tab if necessary. In the Collision Sounds group, we'll specify a sound in the Between Objects zone. You can specify a full pathname in this zone but we recommend you to click on the "..." button (2) and select the following file: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Media Files\Sounds\Sound07.wav". The full pathname to this file appear in the edit zone (3).
- 9. You can hear the sound by clicking on the Play button (³). When done, click **OK**. Each time a sprite collide with the Spinning Ball you'll hear this sound. If you want to hear the collision sounds, you must test the screensaver fullscreen (**F11**). The collision sound are not audible in **Play** mode.

IMPORTANT: Only **WAV** sounds are supported for collision sound. The sound feature can be disabled by the end user (in the compiled screensaver).

Lesson 1.7 - Defining a background music

In this lesson, we'll learn how to add a background music. This music will be played in loop. Supported music formats are WAV, MP3, MID and MOD.

Set a background music

1. Choose Project/Music... or click on the Background Music button in the local toolbar. A dialog opens:

| Project Pi | roperties | ? × |
|------------|---|--|
| General B | ackground Background Music Video Clip | 0 0 |
| 6 | Music Pathname: (264 Kb) | Play |
| 1 | Save a copy of the music file in the project document [not recommended for large music files] | |
| | Restart music playback when finished | |
| 6 | Most of the sound cards can play MIDI and WAV simultaneou specify a MIDI music here you will be able to add WAV collis Background MIDI music will not be stopped. | sly. So, F you ons sounds. |
| | So It's not recommended to specify a MP3 or MOD music file work on latest configuration with DirectX 6 or later and Window | (although it could vs MediaPlayer). |
| | | |
| | | ancel Help |

- 2. The Background Music is already selected. You can specify a pathname in the Music Pathname zone but we recommend you to click on the "..." button (1) and select the following file: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Media Files\Music\Autobahn-Urbanlex-pssp.wav". The full pathname to this file appear in the edit zone.
- 3. You can hear the sound by clicking on the Play button (2).
- 4. This file contains a loop music. It means that this is a short sequence (a few seconds) that can be played in loop to simulate a music without end. Of course, we need to configure this and click on the Restart music playback when finished option (3). Note that this is almost always the case with background music.
- 5. When this is all done, click OK.
- 6. If you want to hear the background music you must test the screensaver fullscreen (F11). The background music is not audible in Play mode.

Lesson 1.8 - Saving the project

Our screensaver project is finished. Now it's a good idea to save it (we could have done this before). You can save the project using the standard Windows® dialog box or use a built-in feature that permits you to quick-save the project in the Librarian (recommended). Choose one of the procedures below:

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved, reloaded and modified in the built-in editor window. Once compiled, a screensaver cannot be modified. So save your projects as SSP files and don't lose these files!

Save the project to a SSP file

- Choose File/Save... or click on the Save (Ctrl+S) button in the toolbar. A standard Windows® dialog box opens.
- 2. Save the file in the Axialis Librarian: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorial1.ssp". Click Save when done.
- 3. The project has been saved to a SSP file.

Quickly save the project in the Librarian (recommended)

1. You can also save the file in the **Librarian** directly. A feature has been implemented to quickly save files in the Librarian. In the **librarian**, select the **"Screen Savers"** folder in the tree (**1**).



- Click on the Add to Librarian button (2) or choose File/Add to the Librarian (F3). A dialog box opens (see above). In the Name field (3), enter a filename (no extension required) or keep the proposed name. Click OK.
- **3.** The SSP file is saved in the Librarian (④).

Lesson 1.9 - Compiling the screensaver

The screensaver project is done and saved. Time has come to compile it and create your first Windows® screensaver. This procedure will create a SCR file (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info). You can set this screensaver as Windows® default or just save it in a specific location for redistribution. Compiling a screensaver is done in 6 steps:

Step 1 of 6 - Filename

 Choose Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4) or click on the Compile SCR File button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| | You are abo file format i When comp t as is (no ii | ut to create a new stand-al will be compatible with Windo iled, you'll be able to use it p rstall procedure will be creat fur the name and location of | one screen saver file. The ws screen savers (.SCR), versonally or to redistribute red). |
|----------|---|--|--|
| <u> </u> | nease spec Blename: | Tutorial1 | .SCR |
| | location: | C:\WINNT\System32 | 8 - |
| | <u>,</u> | Place R in my personal (accessible from the Co Set R as the Current W | Windows System folder ntrol Panel) Indows Screen Saver |

- 2. In the Filename field (²), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial1".
- **3.** Do not change the **Location** field (**③**). It may be disabled. You can specify here the folder where you want to create the file. If you want to redistribute this SCR file, specify your output folder. If you want to use this screensaver on your computer only, do not modify the proposed entry (see below). In this tutorial, we'll set the screensaver as Windows® default. So, don't change this field.
- 4. Do not change the **Place it in my personal Windows System folder** option (④). This option is used to create the file in Windows system folder. In such a case, the screensaver will be visible in Windows® screensaver settings list (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info).
- 5. Choose the Set it as the Current Windows Screen Saver option (5). The fields 6 and 9 are disabled because they're set by default when you choose to set your screensaver as default. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 6 - Description

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial1**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | Descrip You can cust Copyright, W | Dtion omize your screen saver by specifying a Title, /eb link, Comment as well as RSS feed URLs. |
|---|---|--|
| |]jtle: | Tutorials |
| | ⊆opyright: | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights res |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 9 | 855 Feeds: | Enable RSS Read Specify URLs_ |

- 7. Specify your own data in **Copyright**, **Web Site** and **Comment** fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.
- B. Do not modify the RSS settings (³). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 3 of 6 - Customization

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| | You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dailog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|---|---|
| | ci\axials\ax screensaver c |
| | Recommended image size is 400 s to pown. Only BMP, IPEG and PRVB formats are supported. |
| | Use a custom icon for the screensaver SUK rise: |
| | e1(fau)(3+26.000 |
| 9 | Custom toos must only and as any operant the following image fermats: - Notice, 286 colors - 16/11X XP format - 32/32, 286 colors - 22/32, XP format - 40/48, 285 colors - 40/48, VP format |

Step 4 of 6 - Splash screen

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| _ | Splash Scre | en | |
|---|--|--|----------|
| | When the Screen Save seconds. By default it information from the p image (BMP, JPEG, PN | er starts, it displays a splash screen for a fi displays a text splash screen with the revious screen, but you can specify a cust () to replace the text n n. | ew om |
| - | No Splash Screen Display a Text Spk Display an Image b | ash Screen based Splash Screen: | |
| | | Display Time 2 2 Seconds | |
| | | | |

8. Choose the option Display a Text Splash Screen (●). In the Display Time group (❷), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click Next.

Step 5 of 6 - Preview window

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver. In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the moving and colliding balls!

| | Preview Win when the user selects appears in a small previ- preview is displayed bu standard static image. | dow a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it ew window. By default, a reduced anim t you can also specify a custom or a |
|-----|---|---|
| ł | Animated Preview (No Preview - Defau No Preview - Custor | real preview of the screen saver) It Image m Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| ••• | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Vides screensavies (final user may experience technical issues). |

10. Choose the option Animated Preview (1). When done, click Next.

Step 6 of 6 - Ready to go

- **11.** A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the **compilation summary**. If something is wrong, you can go back to the previous screens by clicking **Previous** button
- 10. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

12. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine [we're sure it did :)], the following screen is displayed:

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|-------------------|---|------|
| - | Compilation | |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compiling your project | |
| | V Creating Temporary Files | |
| | V Compressing Images | |
| | Writing SCR file | |
| | Verfying Screen Saver File | |
| ••• | ompilation Successfully Completed. | 3 0 |
| 0 | Test the Properties Dialog Box Now | - |
| maxialis | C | lose |

- 13. You can test the screensaver full screen now. Click on the Test the Screen Saver Now button (1). Do you like? This is YOUR screensaver now.
- 14. You can also test the screensaver Properties dialog box. See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info about the properties/configure dialog box (see "How to install a screensaver", button "Settings"). Click on the **Test the Properties Dialog Box Now** button (2).
- **15.** As you chose to install this screensaver as Windows® default (in Step 1), it will start automatically after a certain period of inactivity of your computer (depends on what you've configured in Windows® Control Panel). Click **Close** to finish.

Lesson 1.10 - Creating an install package

We've learned how to compile a project and create a SCR screensaver. However, installing this screensaver on a computer could be a bit difficult for an inexperienced user. That's why we recommend you to create an install package with your screensaver especially if you wish to redistribute it. In this lesson we'll learn ho to compile the screensaver (like we did in previous lesson) and create an install package during the same procedure. Creating an installation package is done in 9 steps:

Step 1 of 9 - Filenames and location

 Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or click on the Compile Installable Screen Saver button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| 10 | Filenames and Location 🛛 🖤 |
|-----|---|
| 17 | You are about to create a new installable screensaver. First, it w be compiled as a SCR file, then included in an installation package |
| | Screensaver File |
| | Please specify the final filename of the screensaver (the name of the SCR file after the installation): |
| V . | Screensaver: Tutorial1 .SCR |
| | Installation File |
| | Specify the name and the location of the installation file that will be created: |
| | Elename: Tutoria1Install |
| | Location: E:1 |

- 2. In the Screensaver field (2), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial1". This is the filename that will be installed on the end-user computer. This file will not be created on your computer during this compilation. It will be embedded in the install package.
- 3. In the Filename field (3), specify the name of the Install file to create (do not specify the EXE extension). Enter this filename: "Tutorial1Install". In the Location field (3), specify the folder where you want to create the install file on your computer. You can use the button [...] to browse your folders. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 9 - Installation package properties

4. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the Language field (①), select "Automatic (based on Windows settings)". You can here choose the desired language for the screensaver and install procedure. 8 languages are supported: English, French, Spanish, German, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch and Russian. By selecting Automatic, the install procedure will choose the language by itself based on the end-user Windows language. You can also force a specific language.

| | Installati | on Package Properties | |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| | The installation force a particule | procedure supports several languages. You ir language or let the program choose at rup | 0 |
| | Language: | Automatic (Based on Windows Settings) | - |
| R | The final packa | ge can be a single solid file or a set of files: | 0 |
| | Pagkage: | Solid Instal (one file - Internet or (\$ROM) | ~ |
| | Advanced The install Wizard ina | Layout Customization ation procedure layout can be customized: ge, install icon, options, text color | 6 |

5. In the Package field (2), specify "Solid Install". See context help [?] for more information on this field.
6. Do not change the Advanced Customization settings (③). This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 3 of 9 - User license agreement

7. The third dialog box opens (see below). It permits you to specify a **User License Agreement**. If you choose to include a license agreement, the user will be prompted to accept it during the installation procedure. It he refuses it, the install procedure ends. In this tutorial, we'll choose to include the default user license agreement.

| complie an Insta | User License Agreement | ? X |
|------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 96 | You can specify a User License Agreement text that wi displayed before the installation starts. Ser must this agreement to proceed. | l be agree with |
| | carefully before installing the program. By installing the program, you accept the terms of this Argeement. If not agree to the terms of this Argeement, quit this in procedure and promptly delete the files. 1. COPYRIGHT The "(ScreenSaver) (3) creen Saver (the "Softwar | re you do stallation |
| | Lotal Sale Load Defaul | tancel |

8. Choose the option Add a User License Agreement (1). In the edit zone below you see the default agreement (2). It is multi-languages. This is only a proposal that you can customize (3). See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 4 of 9 - Screensaver Information

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial1**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | Screen You can cust Copyright, W | saver Information omize your screen saver by specify reb link, Comment as well as RSS fe | ng a Title, ed URLs. |
|---|--|--|-------------------------|
| | Jitle: | Tutorial3 | |
| | ⊆opyright: | ight © 2004 Axials Software | < N |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com | |
| - | Company: | Axialis Software | -0 |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver | / |
| 0 | RSS: | Enable RSS R 🚯 🛛 Spe | cify URLs |

CORPORATE EDITION

- 7. Specify your own data in Copyright, Web Site, Company and Comment fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.
- B. Do not modify the RSS settings (³). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 5 of 9 - Screensaver Customization

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| | Screensaver Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dialog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|---|--|
| | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box;] |
| | citanialstax screensaver (|
| | Recommanded image size is 400 x 30 points. Only BMO, 34E0 and FMO finance are spectrat. |
| | e:\faus-26.ico |
| D | Custom icone must only and assetly contain the following image formats: - 64:01, 556 color: 32:022, 397 format 32:102, 556 color: 32:022, 397 format - 43:42, 555 color: 43:082, 39 format |

Step 6 of 9 - Splash screen

10. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| Compile an Inst | allable Screen Saver - St | ep 6 of 9 | ? X |
|-----------------|--|--|--|
| | Splash Screen | ı | |
| | When the Screen Saver s seconds. By default it dis information from the prev image (BMP, JPEG, PNG) (| tarts, it displays a splash scre plays a text splash screen wit ious screen, but you can spe to replace the text n. | en for a few h the cify a custom |
| | No Splash Screen Display a Text Splash | Screen | |
| V. | 😑 Display an Image bas | ed Splash Screen: | - |
| | | | - |
| a l | • | Display Time | .0 |
| 00 | | 2 58 | conds |
| | | | |
| axialis | | Next >> | ancel |
| SOFTWARE | (Constant) (C | | |

Choose the option Display a Text Splash Screen (1). In the Display Time group (2), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click Next.

Step 7 of 9 - Preview window

12. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver). See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info (see "How to install a screensaver"). In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the moving and colliding balls!

| | Preview W | indow |
|---|---|--|
| 9 | When the user select appears in a small pr preview is displayed standard static imag | ts a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it review window. By default, a reduced anim- but you can also specify a custom or a le. |
| | Animated Previe | w (real preview of the screen saver) |
| | 😁 No Preview - De | fault Image |
| | No Preview - Cu | stom Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | 1 L. | |
| | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Video screensavers (final user may experience technical issues). |
| - | | Image recommanded size is 152 s 112 pixels. |

13. Choose the option **Animated Preview** (**1**). When done, click **Next**.

Step 8 of 9 - Activation code

14. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Activation code settings. This dialog box is used to create demo or limited versions of your screensavers. This is a useful feature if you want to sell your screensavers. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| 1 | Activation Co Using this feature you'll Activation Code to get t Codes will be generated | be able to force the he full version using the type O | user to enter an e Screen Saver. The ving ID numbers. |
|---|---|--|---|
| | Use an Activation C | ode | |
| | Screen Saver ID: | Company/Author | ID: |
| | 12A84044 | FFE77CFC | Advanced_ |
| | Code Based or | User Name | |
| | Limitations (b | efore activation) | 1 |
| | Copiration (eggines | Date (after Trial Peri 30 20 days af ber of Sprites/Side | od) ter installation s |
| | lighted to | 5 S sprite | s or sides |

Step 9 of 9 - Ready to go

15. A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the **compilation summary**. If something is wrong,

you can go back to the previous screens by clicking **Previous** button. Also, read the **information about Copyright**.

16. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

17. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine, the following screen is displayed:

| Compile an Install | able Screen Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|--------------------|--|------|
| | Compilation | |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compling your project | |
| | V Compling SCR file, Compressing images | |
| | Compressing SCR file | |
| | V Creating EXE Installation Package | |
| | Verifying Package Files | |
| | Compilation Successfully Completed. | .0 |
| D | list the indefinition Perlange Mark | |
| maxialis | Clos | ie 🚽 |

18. You can test the installation package now. Click on the Test the Installation Package Now button (1). The install procedure starts, just follow it. It will install the screensaver on your computer. This is exactly whet the end user will do. Convenient, isn't it? Click Close to finish.

The tutorial is done

We hope you enjoyed the creation of this first screensaver. If you want to see if the project you've done is correct, you can open our version to compare them: "...\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorials\Tutorial1.ssp".

Tutorial 2 - Create a Slideshow Screensaver

Lesson 2.1 - Creating the new project

In this lesson we'll create a new slideshow based screensaver project and take a look at the editor window.

Create the project

1. In the menu, choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project, a dialog box opens. Select the "Slide Show Based Screen Saver" type in the list and click Next. A second dialog box opens:

| | Screen Saver Information |
|------|--|
| _ | |
| | Tou can specify screen saver and Author information below: |
| | Screen Saver |
| | Itle: |
| | Project2 |
| | Description : |
| 0- | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 1.9. | Author |
| 0.0 | Name: |
| Line | MarcEMILE |
| 20 | Copyright: |
| ~ | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights reserved |
| | |

 2. Specify the Screensaver Title: "Tutorial2". Also specify your own Description, Author Name, Copyright (1) information and click Next.

<u>REMARK</u>: Click on the context help button (2) to get more information on a specific area in the dialog box.

A quick tour of the slideshow screensaver project editor window

3. A new project window opens:

CORPORATE EDITION

| Asi-Is Professional Screen Sav Fie Draffel to arian Pavortes V | er Producer 3.6 |
|--|-----------------|
| Hecentry Used Editoriana Particle Preformational Screen Sorre Control Preformations Control Preformations Con | |
| Ferrit Folder | Options |
| 8 | 6 |

- 4. In the **Application window** (**1**) you see the **menu** and the **main toolbar**. This toolbar can be customized by double-clicking or right-clicking on it. When you select a command in this menu or main toolbar, it acts on the selected item or window.
- 5. In the Librarian (2) you can select the folder that contains the media files (images, animations, music, sounds) that you'll use in your project (3).
- 6. The Project document window is named "Tutorial2" (④). The application is multi-document enabled. It means that you can create or open several documents in the working area of the application. A local toolbar is located in the document window. If you click on a button in this toolbar (④), it acts on the selected item in the document window. This toolbar cannot be customized.
- 7. The Document window is divided in three parts. In the upper-left pane (⑤) are located the edit dialog boxes that you'll use to set project and slide properties. It is composed of 5 windows that you can activate by clicking on the associated tabs: General, Slide Properties, Background, Default Music and Video Clip. At the bottom of the window (⑥) you see the list of slides included in the project (actually no slide). Slides you'll add in the project will be added in this list. Slide order can be rearranged by drag & drop and multi-selection is possible. Finally, in the upper-right pane (⑦), a preview window is available.

Lesson 2.2 - Defining the background

In this lesson, we'll customize the screensaver background.

Change the background: Gradient background

- **1.** In the project window click on the **Background** tab (**1**). The associated dialog box appears (see below).
- Actually the "Solid Color" background is selected. We'll define a gray gradient background. Select the Gradient background type by clicking on the small option bullet (2).

| eneral Skde P | Properties Background Default Music Video Clip | Preview |
|-----------------|---|---------|
| - | 🖶 Image Wallpaper | |
| | Estimates (c)documents and settings/administrator/my doc) | |
| 100 | 🕷 Statch 🛞 Certer 🗎 Die | |
| 2- | • Gradient | 6 |
| | From color | |
| | To color. | |
| | Solid Color | |
| | Care III | |

- 3. In the From Color field (3), click on the down arrow (on right). A drop-down list with several colors appears. Click on the "Gray-50" color (row 3, right column). In the To Color field (3), click on the down arrow (on right). The same color list appears. Click on the "Dark Gray" color (row 1, right column).
- 4. On the right side of the Gradient group, you see some additional options. Select the Vertical option (4). If you followed correctly the instructions, the preview window on right should display a nice dark gray gradient background (5).

Lesson 2.3 - Adding the photos

In this lesson, we'll add the photos (slides) to the screensaver. We'll learn 3 different methods to perform this operation. Please follow in sequence the 3 methods as described below. 2 slides will be added with each method for a total of 6 slides.

Method 1 - Add photos from the Slide Properties dialog

- **1.** In the project window click on the **Slide Properties** tab (**0**). A dialog box appears (see below).
- As no slides is actually present in the screensaver, only a Add Slides button is available in this dialog box. Click on this button or click on the associated button in the toolbar (2). You can also choose Project/Insert New Slides (Ins) in the menu.



 A standard Windows dialog box opens to let you choose the images you want to add as slides. Browse your disks and go to this folder in the Librarian: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Media Files\Images\Slides\". Select the two following files: "Ian Britton - Bales of Hay.jpg" and "Ian Britton - Mountain Stream.jpg".

HINT: Press CTRL (keep pressed) while you click on the 2 files to select them.

4. Click Open button when done. The 2 files are added in the Slide list as follows (1). The Slide Properties dialog box contents has changed, several options appeared (2). We'll work with them later. Each time you select a slide in the list (1), the preview (3) and the Properties dialog box (2) changed accordingly.

| erai Silde P | roperties Background Delauk Music | Video Cilo | (Income |
|--------------|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| | älde Image pulleienen | 10.00 | |
| | Save a copy of the file in the protect of | ionment | |
| | Bane: | Transition Effect | 2.200 |
| 3 | Description | Random Transition | |
| | Duration | Display Size | Distance of the |
| | Event duration 10 10 1 1 Based on associated sound | Scale 1:1 Maximized (keep ratio) | |
| | Associated Sound | < | |
| | Default Specific Mute Sect a train | novat Bissed | |
| | | _// | |
| | 200 | | |
| | | | |
| Etan - Seles | of In Britton - | | |

Method 2 - Add photos from the Librarian window

- 5. In the Librarian window (see below), select the "Media Files\Images\Slides" folder (1). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the list below.
- 6. Select the 2 files "Ian Britton Poppies.jpg" and "Ian Britton Sunrise over the River Clyde.jpg" in the list (2) and use a mouse drag & drop to place them at the end of the slide list (3). The 2 files are added in the Slide list. The preview is changed accordingly (4).

HINT: Press CTRL (keep pressed) while you click on the 2 files to select them.

| File Edit Project Ubrarian Fa | | |
|---|---|-------|
| - 196 197 197 197 197 197 197 197 197 197 197 | A res A mittane V TI I 2 sarp. A lautes . Richel . R M M . M . | 23. |
| Rependy Used | | |
| thearian | x Distorial Bali x n Distance X 2 a 6 6 17 m Balance | . = × |
| Hedia Files Animatoris Filed | General (Skie Proprietor) Background (Collaut Huse (Histor Cip) | - |
| Images Backgrounds | 34 hays talkans | 1 |
| Sprites | Same Same a copy of the file in the project document | |
| ₩ × € 0 (E- 8-) | Random Tanation | |
| | Description Descripti Descripti Description Description Description | |
| Asials-2.pg lan Britton - Bales of Hay-3pg | Associated Sound | |
| | Const Sepole Dense Bare Bare Beparate parted Bereet | |
| Ant E21 CARD COL | | |
| 714-5628 714-56528 | | |
| * | In brits- Bale of Ins brits- Ins brits- Ins brits- Same | |
| In fettor - Survise over the Surset over t | ren by monomischen by materially and de fort Que | |
| | 8 | |

Method 3 - Add photos using the Explorer window

The application includes a powerful built-in Explorer that will permit to browse your disks with image previews. This will permit to select your files and copy/paste them to the project to add slides.

7. Open a new Explorer window: Choose File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E) or press the New Explorer button in main toolbar. A new Explorer window opens over your actual project window (see below).



- In the left pane, browse in Axialis Librarian and select the "Media Files\Images\Slides" folder (1). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the right pane.
- 9. Select the 2 last files "Ian Britton Winter Scene, Northumberland.jpg" and "Ian Britton Sunset over the Irish Sea from Blackpool.jpg" in the list (2). Now copy the files in the Clipboard by clicking the Copy button (3) or by choosing Edit/Copy (Ctrl+C) menu.

CORPORATE EDITION

HINT: Press CTRL (keep pressed) while you click on the 2 files to select them.

10. Return to the project document: Select Window/Tutorial2 in the menu or press Ctrl+F6. Choose Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V) or click on the Paste button (1). The 2 files are added in the Slide list (2). The preview is changed accordingly (3).



Lesson 2.4 - Specifying display settings and transitions

In this lesson, see how to change the way the photos are displayed on screen. Also, we'll change the slide transitions (the way we pass from one slide to another using a short animation effect). Finally, we'll test the slide display fullscreen.

Change screensaver display options

1. Select the **General** tab (**1**). The associated dialog box appears (see below).

| 201 | Title: | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|--|
| U | Tutorial2 | |
| | Author | Copyright. |
| Se la constante | Marc EMILE | @ 2004 Asialis Software - All rights reserve |
| 100 | Description | |
| | This is a tutorial screensayer | |
| | This is a futorial screensaver | 4 |
| 3- | Options Bepeat forever | Margir: 70 🛢 pixels |

- 2. In the **Options** group, choose the **Repeat Forever** option (2) to make the screensaver loop.
- 3. Select the Shadow behind pictures option (3). This will add a cool relief effect to the slides.
- 4. In the Margin field (④) enter "70". This parameter permits to specify a margin in the slides. As a result, the images displayed using the "Maximized" option will respect this margin, creating a very nice effect.

Change slide display options

5. Select the **Slide Properties** tab (**1**). The associated dialog box appears (see below).



6. In the Slide list, select all the available slides (②). To do so, click on the first one, then click on the last one pressing the SHIFT key. You can also press Ctrl+A. The content of the properties dialog box changes accordingly. The pathname field becomes grayed because it is different for each slide. The other options are available.

IMPORTANT: When several slides are selected in the list, changes in the **Properties** dialog box apply to <u>all the selected slides</u>.

- 7. In the **Display Size** group, select **Maximized (keep ratio)** (3). This will display the images using the maximum available space (respecting the specified margin).
- 8. In the **Duration** group, select **Fixed Duration** and specify "5" seconds (④). The display preview changed accordingly (⑤).

Change slide transition effects

Now we'll specify what transition effects we want when the slideshow passes from one slide to another. The application permits you to specify a different transition effect for each slide. We'll use the fade effect for the 3 first slides and the horizontal cross fade for the 3 last ones.

- **9.** Select the 3 first slides in the **Slide list**. To do so, click on the first one, then click on the 3rd one pressing the SHIFT key. In the **Transition Effect** group, select the **"Fade"** effect.
- 10. Select the 3 last slides in the Slide list using the same method. In the Transition Effect group, select the "Cross Fade (horizontal)" effect.
- **11.** We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press **F11** or click the **Full Screen** button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.

Lesson 2.5 - Defining a background music

In this lesson, we'll learn how to add a background music. This music will be played in loop. Supported music formats are WAV, MP3, MID and MOD.

Set a background music

1. Select the Default Music tab. The associated dialog box appears (see below).



- 2. You can specify a pathname in the Music Pathname zone but we recommend you to click on the "..." button (①) and select the following file: "...\My Documents\Axialis
 Librarian\Media Files\Music\Philharmone-Loophead-pssp.wav". The full pathname to this file appear in the edit zone.
- **3.** You can hear the sound by clicking on the Play button (**2**).
- 4. This file contains a loop music. It means that this is a short sequence (a few seconds) that can be played in loop to simulate a music without end. Of course, we need to configure this and click on

the **Restart music playback when finished** option (**3**). Note that this is almost always the case with background music.

- 5. When this is all done, click OK.
- 6. Now you can test the screensaver fullscreen (F11).

Lesson 2.6 - Saving the project

Our screensaver project is finished. Now it's a good idea to save it (we could have done this before). You can save the project using the standard Windows® dialog box or use a built-in feature that permits you to quick-save the project in the Librarian (recommended). Choose one of the procedure below:

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved, reloaded and modified in the built-in editor window. Once compiled, a screensaver cannot be modified. So save your projects as SSP files and don't lose these files!

Save the project to a SSP file

- Choose File/Save... or click on the Save (Ctrl+S) button in the toolbar. A standard Windows® dialog box opens.
- 2. Save the file in the Axialis Librarian: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorial2.ssp". Click Save when done.
- 3. The project has been saved to a SSP file.

Quickly save the project in the Librarian (recommended)

1. You can also save the file in the **Librarian** directly. A feature has been implemented to quickly save files in the Librarian. In the **librarian**, select the **"Screen Savers"** folder in the tree (**1**).



Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer

CORPORATE EDITION

- Click on the Add to Librarian button (2) or choose File/Add to the Librarian (F3). A dialog box opens (see above). In the Name field (3), enter a filename (no extension required) or keep the proposed name. Click OK.
- **3.** The SSP file is saved in the Librarian (④).

Lesson 2.7 - Compiling the screensaver

The screensaver project is done and saved. Time has come to compile it and create your first Windows® screensaver. This procedure will create a SCR file (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info). You can set this screensaver as Windows® default or just save it in a specific location for redistribution. Compiling a screensaver is done in 6 steps:

Step 1 of 6 - Filename

 Choose Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4) or click on the Compile SCR File button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| | You are abo file format i When comp it as is (no i | me but to create a new stand-alone like compatible with Windows a liked, you!! be able to use it personstall procedure will be created) for the name and location of the | screen saver file. The screen savers (.SCR), onaly or to redistribute |
|---------|---|---|---|
| | Elename: | Tutorial1 | 2 .scr |
| | Location: | C:\WINNT\System32 | 8 🖃 |
| | 0- | Place it in my personal Win (accessible from the Control | lows System folder (Panel) |
| | 6- | Set it as the Current Windo | ws Screen Saver |
| axialis | | <u>М</u> енt >> | Cancel |

- 2. In the Filename field (2), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial2".
- 3. Do not change the Location field (3). It may be disabled. You can specify here the folder where you want to create the file. If you want to redistribute this SCR file, specify your output folder. If you want to use this screensaver on your computer only, do not modify the proposed entry (see below). In this tutorial, we'll set the screensaver as Windows® default. So, don't change this field.
- 4. Do not change the **Place it in my personal Windows System folder** option (④). This option is used to create the file in Windows system folder. In such a case, the screensaver will be visible in Windows® screensaver settings list (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info).
- 5. Choose the Set it as the Current Windows Screen Saver option (5). The fields 6 and 9 are disabled because they're set by default when you choose to set your screensaver as default. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 6 - Description

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial2**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | Descrip You can cust Copyright, W | btion onlize your screen saver by specifying a Title, reb link, Comment as well as RSS feed URLs. |
|---|---|---|
| |]jtle: | Tutorials |
| | ⊆opyright: | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights res |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com |
| • | Comment: | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 0 | 855 Feeds: | Enable RSS Read Specify URLs_ |

- 7. Specify your own data in **Copyright**, **Web Site** and **Comment** fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.
- B. Do not modify the RSS settings (3). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 3 of 6 - Customization

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.



Step 4 of 6 - Splash screen

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| Compile a SCR Sc | reen Saver - Step 4 of 6 | ? X |
|------------------|---|---|
| | Splash Screen When the Screen Saver starts, it displays a spl seconds. By default it displays a text splash so information from the previous screen, but you image (BMP, JPEG, PNG) to replace the text of No Splash Screen Display a Text Splash Screen Display an Image based Splash Screen Display an Image based Splash Screen | ash screen for a few reen with the can specify a custom n. n. Time |
| maxialis | < <pre>Content of the second se</pre> | Cancel |

8. Choose the option **Display a Text Splash Screen** (1). In the **Display Time** group (2), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click **Next**.

Step 5 of 6 - Preview window

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver). See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info (see "How to install a screensaver"). In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the slideshow!

| | When the user selects appears in a small prev preview is displayed bu standard static image. | a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it iew window. By default, a reduced anim- it you can also specify a custom or a |
|---|---|---|
| | Animated Preview | |
| | CONTRACTOR FIG TIG TIG TIG TIG TIG TIG TIG TIG TIG T | (real preview of the screen saver) |
| | 😁 No Preview - Defa | it Image |
| | No Preview - Custo | m Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | 2 | (-) |
| | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Video streems were (final user may experience rechnical issues). |
| - | | Image recommanded size is 152 s 112 pixels. |
| | | |

10. Choose the option **Animated Preview** (**1**). When done, click **Next**.

Step 6 of 6 - Ready to go

- 11. A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the compilation summary. If something is wrong, you can go back to the previous screens by clicking Previous button. Also, read the information about Copyright.
- 10. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

12. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine [we're sure it did :)], the following screen is displayed:

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|-------------------|---|-----|
| - | Compilation | |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compiling your project | |
| | V Creating Temporary Files | |
| | V Compressing Images | |
| | Writing SCR file | |
| | Verifying Screen Saver File | |
| • | mpilation Successfully Completed. | |
| | 📜 🚺 last the Susan Sover Kno 🥑 | .2 |
| - | Test the Properties Dialog Box Now 🗳 | - |
| axialis | Clos | |

- 13. You can test the screensaver fullscreen now. Click on the Test the Screen Saver Now button (1). Do you like? This is YOUR screensaver now.
- 14. You can also test the screensaver Properties dialog box. See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info about the properties/configure dialog box (see "How to install a screensaver", button "Settings"). Click on the **Test the Properties Dialog Box Now** button (2).
- **15.** As you chose to install this screensaver as Windows® default (in Step 1), it will start automatically after a certain period of inactivity of your computer (depends on what you've configured in Windows® Control Panel). Click **Close** to finish.

Lesson 2.8 - Creating an install package

We've learned how to compile a project and create a SCR screensaver. However, installing this screensaver on a computer could be a bit difficult for an unexperienced user. That's why we recommend you to create an install package with your screensaver especially if you wish to redistribute it. In this lesson we'll learn ho to compile the screensaver (like we did in previous lesson) and create an install package during the same procedure. Creating an installation package is done in 9 steps:

Step 1 of 9 - Filenames and location

 Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or click on the Compile Installable Screen Saver button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| | Filenames and Location |
|-----------|---|
| | Screensaver File |
| | Please specify the final filename of the screensaver (the name of the SCR file after the installation): |
| | Screensaver: Tutorial1 |
| | Installation File |
| | Specify the name and the location of the installation file that will be created: |
| | Elename: Tutoria1Install |
| 0 | Location: E:1 |
| anovialia | |

- 2. In the Screensaver field (2), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial2". This is the filename that will be installed on the end-user computer. This file will not be created on your computer during this compilation. It will be embedded in the install package.
- 3. In the Filename field (③), specify the name of the Install file to create (do not specify the EXE extension). Enter this filename: "Tutorial2Install". In the Location field (④), specify the folder where you want to create the install file on your computer. You can use the button [...] to browse your folders. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 9 - Installation package properties

4. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the Language field (①), select "Automatic (based on Windows settings)". You can here choose the desired language for the screensaver and install procedure. 8 languages are supported: English, French, Spanish, German, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch and Russian. By selecting Automatic, the install procedure will choose the language by itself based on the end-user Windows language. You can also force a specific language.

| Installat | ion Package Properties | |
|---------------------------------------|---|----|
| The installation force a particul | procedure supports several languages. You ar language or let the program choose at run | 0 |
| Language: | Automatic (Based on Windows Settings) | - |
| The final packa | ge can be a single solid file or a set of files: | 0 |
| Pagkage: | Solid Install (one file - Internet or Co-ROM) | • |
| Advanced The install Wizard inc | Layout Customization ation procedure layout can be oustomized: spe, install icon, options, text color Advanced Customization | .6 |

- 5. In the Package field (2), specify "Solid Install". See context help [?] for more information on this field.
- 6. Do not change the Advanced Customization settings (3). This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 3 of 9 - User license agreement

7. The third dialog box opens (see below). It permits you to specify a User License Agreement. If you choose to include a license agreement, the user will be prompted to accept it during the installation procedure. It he refuses it, the install procedure ends. In this tutorial, we'll choose to include the default user license agreement.

| | User License Agreement |
|---|---|
| 9 | You can specify a User License Agreement text that will be displayed before the installation starts. O ser must agree with this agreement to proceed. |
| | Carefully before installing the program. By installing the program, you accept the terms of this Agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this Agreement, quit this installation procedure and promptly delete the files. 1. COPINIGHT The "ScreenSaver" Coping Screen Saver (the "Software") is |
| 0 | Lottom Save Loadigefault |

8. Choose the option Add a User License Agreement (1). In the edit zone below you see the default agreement (2). It is multi-languages. This is only a proposal that you can customize (3). See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 4 of 9 - Screensaver Information

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial1**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | You can cust Copyright, W | saver Information omize your screen saver by specify reb link, Comment as well as RSS fe | ing a Title, ed URLs. |
|---|------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| | <u>T</u> itle: | Tutorial3 | - |
| | ⊆opyright: | ight @ 2004 Axials Software | N |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com | 1 |
| - | Company: | Axialis Software | -20 |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver | / |
| 0 | 855: | Enable RSS R 🚯 🛛 - Spe | cify URLs |

7. Specify your own data in Copyright, Web Site, Company and Comment fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.

8. Do not modify the **RSS** settings (¹). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click **Next**.

Step 5 of 9 - Screensaver Customization

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| 1 | Screensaver Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dalog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|---|---|
| | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box: |
| | citaxialstax screensaver p |
| | Recommended image site it 400 s 19 pixels. Child BMD, TAPGI and PRNG formats are supported. Uge a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file: |
| | et/fauxs-26.ico |
| D | Cuptors licers must only and an antily cost also the following image formats: - Works, 254 colors - 24/26, 30 Format - 32/262, 254 colors - 22/262, 30F format - 40/465, 30F format |

Step 6 of 9 - Splash screen

10. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| Compile an Insta | llable Screen Saver - St | tep 6 of 9 | ? X |
|------------------|--|--|---|
| | Splash Screen When the Screen Saver s seconds. By default it dis information from the prev- image (BMP, 3PEG, PNG) / No Splash Screen Display a Text Splash Display a Text Splash | 1 tarts, it displays a splash scre plays a text splash screen will ious screen, but you can spe to replace the text 1 n. Screen d Splash Screen: Display Time | teen for a few th the ofly a custom |
| maxialis | << Previous | 2 54 Next >> | conds |

11. Choose the option Display a Text Splash Screen (●). In the Display Time group (②), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click Next.

Step 7 of 9 - Preview window

12. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver). See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info (see "How to install a screensaver"). In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the slideshow!

| 9 | Preview W when the user sele appears in a small p preview is displayed standard static may | Tindow tts a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it review window. By default, a reduced anim t but you can also specify a custom or a p. |
|---|--|---|
| J | Animated Previe No Preview - De No Preview - Cu | w (real preview of the screen saver) fault Image stom Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Video screensavers (final user may experience technical issues). |
| - | | Image recommanded |

13. Choose the option Animated Preview (**0**). When done, click Next.

Step 8 of 9 - Activation code

14. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Activation code settings. This dialog box is used to create demo or limited versions of your screensavers. This is a useful feature if you want to sell your screensavers. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| 1 | Activation Code Using this feature you'l be able to force the user to enter an Activation Code to get the full version to Screen Saver. The Codes will be generated using the two wing ID numbers. |
|---------|---|
| | Se an Activation Code |
| | Screen Saver ID: Company/Author ID: |
| | 12A84044 FFE77CFC Advanced. |
| | Code Based on User Name |
| | Limitations (before activation) |
| | Expiration Date (after Trisl Period) egpres 30 after Installation United number of Sprites/Sides |
| axialis | Instead to 5 sprites or sides |

Step 9 of 9 - Ready to go

15. A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the **compilation summary**. If something is wrong, you can go back to the previous screens by clicking **Previous** button. Also, read the **information about Copyright**. 16. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

17. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine, the following screen is displayed:

| Compile an Instal | lable Screen Saver - Compilation ? X |
|-------------------|--|
| | Compilation |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compling your project |
| | Compling SCR. File, Compressing images |
| | Compressing SCR file |
| | V Creating EVE Installation Package |
| | Verfying Package Files |
| | Compilation Successfully Completed. |
| D | Back the installation Perlage Struct |
| ini axialis | Close |

18. You can test the installation package now. Click on the Test the Installation Package Now button (1). The install procedure starts, just follow it. It will install the screensaver on your computer. This is exactly whet the end user will do. Convenient, isn't it? Click Close to finish.

The tutorial is done

We hope you enjoyed the creation of this first screensaver. If you want to see if the project you've done is correct, you can open our version to compare them: "...\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorials\Tutorial2.ssp".

Tutorial 3 - Create a Flash® Screensaver

Lesson 3.1 - Creating the new project

In this lesson we'll create a new Flash® based screensaver project and take a look at the editor window.

Create the project

 In the menu, choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project, a dialog box opens. Select the "Flash® Based Screen Saver" type in the list and click Next. A second dialog box opens:

| | Screen Saver Information |
|------|--|
| | Screen Saver Information |
| | You can specify Screen Saver and Author information below: |
| | Screen Saver |
| | Itle: |
| | P ROBERT |
| | Description : |
| 0- | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 1.9. | Author |
| - il | Name: |
| | Marc EMILE |
| 20 | Copyright: |
| | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights reserved |
| | Cannan and |

 2. Specify the Screensaver Title: "Tutorial3". Also specify your own Description, Author Name, Copyright (1) information and click Next.

<u>REMARK</u>: Click on the context help button (2) to get more information on a specific area in the dialog box.

A quick tour of the slideshow screensaver project editor window

3. A new project window opens:

CORPORATE EDITION

| Act to Professional Screen Saver Prod Pic Droved Black Pavotes Were Were Droved Black Pavotes Were Were Droved Black Professional Screen Saver Prod Pic Droved Black Professional Screen Saver Profession Pic Droved Black Profession Profession Pic Droved Black Profession Profession Pic Droved Black Profession Pic Droved Bl | lacer 3.6 ov Heb O Dubranan X D D Q Search • @Parontes • Q | |
|--|---|---------|
| Aronishi Cursors Cu | All 4 Background (Flash Movie Inter Agence Complete Agence Complete Agence Complete Decoption The is a substill science with | Protect |

- 4. In the **Application window** (**1**) you see the **menu** and the **main toolbar**. This toolbar can be customized by double-clicking or right-clicking on it. When you select a command in this menu or main toolbar, it acts on the selected item or window.
- 5. In the Librarian (2) you can select the folder that contains the media files (images, animations, music, sounds) that you'll use in your project (3).
- 6. The Project document window is named "Tutorial3" (³). The application is multi-document enabled. It means that you can create or open several documents in the working area of the application. A local toolbar is located in the document window. If you click on a button in this toolbar (³), it acts on the selected item in the document window. This toolbar cannot be customized.
- The Document window is divided in two parts. In the left side (5) are located the edit dialog boxes that you'll use to set project and slide properties. It is composed of 3 windows that you can activate by clicking on the associated tabs: General, Background and Flash Movie. In the right side (6), a preview window is available.

Lesson 3.2 - Defining the background

In this lesson, we'll customize the screensaver background. We'll choose a solid black background. It is already black by default but we explain the procedure for learning purpose.

Change the background: Black background

- 1. In the project window click on the **Background** tab (**1**). The associated dialog box appears (see below).
- 2. Select the Solid Color background type by clicking on the small option bullet (2).

| General B | lack ound Flash Movie | Preview |
|-----------|--|---------|
| 5 | Estimate Walkpaper | |
| | Gradient Fron color Vetical Horocola To color Ministry Horocola | |
| 0- | Solid Color | |

In the Color field, click on the down arrow on right (3). A drop-down list with several colors appears. Click on the "Black" color. If you followed correctly the instructions, the preview window on right should display a black background (4).

IMPORTANT: We have chosen a black screen because the background color of the Flash file we'll use is black. This is important that you use the same (or similar) color to avoid color flashing when the screensaver starts.

Lesson 3.3 - Specifying the Flash® file

Specify the $\mathsf{Flash}{\mathbb{R}}$ file from the Librarian window

1. In the Librarian window (see below), select the "Media Files\Images\Flash" folder (1). The files contained in this folder are displayed in the list below.



CORPORATE EDITION

- Select the file "Tutorial-Pssp-Black.swf" in the list (2) and use a mouse drag & drop to place it in the document window (3).
- 3. A dialog box opens (see below).

| - | Elash Movie: | (77 Kb) |
|----|---|----------------------|
| F | cuments/Avialis Librarian/Media Files/Flash/Tutorial-P | ssp-Black.swf |
| 60 | Using the Shockwave/Flath format may force the end u to install the Macromedia@ Flath Player. See Help. | iser Play |
| ~ | Save a copy of the file in the project document | |
| 0 | Size | Position (center) |
| 0- | Full Screen (maximized) Specific Size: Width, 100 | Х: 320 Ф Y. 240 Ф |
| 0_ | Show Mouse Pointer (let the user interact with the Automatically Repeat Forever | animation) |

- **4.** In **Flash Movie** field (**1**) you see the full pathname to the file you're about to add. Check that this is the correct file.
- 5. In the Size group, select the Full Screen (maximized) option (2). Also, be sure the option Show Mouse Pointer (3) is NOT checked. This is used to create interactive screensavers (not for this tutorial). When done, Click OK.
- **6.** The file is included in the project (you see the filename in the **Flash Movie** field) and you see the movie in the **Preview** window (on right side).

Changing the Flash® file (another method to specify the file)

7. Once the file has been specified (even if no file has been added yet), you can browse your disks using a Windows standard dialog box and specify any SWF file. In the Flash Movie dialog box (click the tab if necessary), click on the [...] button (①). A standard Windows dialog box opens to let you choose the file you want to add. Browse your disks, select a file and click Open.



The full pathname is added in the Flash Movie field (2) and you see the movie in the Preview window (3).

Lesson 3.4 - Specifying display settings

In this lesson, we'll see how to adjust the Flash display settings. Finally, we'll test the screensaver fullscreen.

Change screensaver display options

1. Select the Flash Movie tab if necessary. The associated dialog box appears (see below).

| eral Ba | siground Flash Movie | | Preview |
|---------|--|-------------------|-----------|
| - | Each Movie: | (77 Kb) | |
| 1 | Using the Shockwave/Flash format may force the end | ow Play | |
| | Save a copy of the file in the project document | | axialis |
| | Size | Position (center) | ar wonear |
| 0= | 🗲 💼 Eull Screen (maximized) Specific Size: | 8 320 2 | (3) |
| | Widh 100 🐨 1 Height 100 🐨 1 | ¥ 240 C | |
| | Eased on screen size | | |

- 2. In the Size group (1), be sure the select the Full Screen option (it should be already selected). Note that you can choose different settings (various scales, based on screen size, custom position on screen...).
- 3. At the bottom of the dialog box, two options are available (2). The first one Show Mouse **Pointer** permit to create an interactive screensaver. It means that the user will see the mouse pointer and will be able to move the mouse and click in the Flash movie without interrupting the screensaver. The second option **Automatically Repeat Forever** permits to play the Flash movie in loop (usually selected).
- 4. Let's take a look at the result fullscreen. Press F11 or click the Full Screen button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed on screen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.

Lesson 3.5 - Saving the project

Our screensaver project is finished. Now it's a good idea to save it (we could have done this before). You can save the project using the standard Windows® dialog box or use a built-in feature that permits you to quick-save the project in the Librarian (recommended). Choose one of the procedure below:

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved, reloaded and modified in the built-in editor window. Once compiled, a screensaver cannot be modified. So save your projects as SSP files and don't lose these files!

Save the project to a SSP file

- Choose File/Save... or click on the Save (Ctrl+S) button in the toolbar. A standard Windows® dialog box opens.
- 2. Save the file in the Axialis Librarian: "...\My Documents\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorial3.ssp". Click Save when done.
- 3. The project has been saved to a SSP file.

Quickly save the project in the Librarian (recommended)

1. You can also save the file in the **Librarian** directly. A feature has been implemented to quickly save files in the Librarian. In the **librarian**, select the **"Screen Savers"** folder in the tree (**1**).



- Click on the Add to Librarian button (2) or choose File/Add to the Librarian (F3). A dialog box opens (see above). In the Name field (3), enter a filename (no extension required) or keep the proposed name. Click OK.
- **3.** The SSP file is saved in the Librarian (④).

Lesson 3.6 - Compiling the screensaver

The screensaver project is done and saved. Time has come to compile it and create your first Windows® screensaver. This procedure will create a SCR file (see What is a screensaver for more info). You can set this screensaver as Windows® default or just save it in a specific location for redistribution. Compiling a screensaver is done in 6 steps:

Step 1 of 6 - Filename

 Choose Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4) or click on the Compile SCR File button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| | You are ab file format when com it as is (no Please spe | me out to create a new stand-alo will be compatible with Window siled, you'll be able to use it pr install procedure will be create ofly the name and location of t | ne screen saver file. The is screen savers (.3CR). rsonally or to redistribute d). he file to create: |
|-------|---|--|---|
| - V . | Elename: | Tutorial1 | .scr |
| | Location: | CI/WINNT\System32 | 8 🖃 |
| | 0- | Place it in my personal Vi (accessible from the Con | Indovis System folder trol Panel) |
|) | 6- | Set it as the Current Wir | dows Screen Saver |
| | | | |

- 2. In the Filename field (²), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial3".
- 3. Do not change the Location field (③). It may be disabled. You can specify here the folder where you want to create the file. If you want to redistribute this SCR file, specify your output folder. If you want to use this screensaver on your computer only, do not modify the proposed entry (see below). In this tutorial, we'll set the screensaver as Windows® default. So, don't change this field.
- 4. Do not change the **Place it in my personal Windows System folder** option (④). This option is used to create the file in Windows system folder. In such a case, the screensaver will be visible in Windows® screensaver settings list (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info).
- 5. Choose the Set it as the Current Windows Screen Saver option (5). The fields 6 and 9 are disabled because they're set by default when you choose to set your screensaver as default. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 6 - Description

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial3**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | Descrip You can cust Copyright, W | Dtion onize your screen saver by specifying a Title, /eb link, Comment as well as RSS feed URLs. |
|---|---|--|
| |]jtle: | Tutorials |
| | Copyright: | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights res |
| - | Web Ske: | http://www.axialis.com |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 0 | 855 Feeds: | Enable RSS Read Specify URLs_ |

- 7. Specify your own data in Copyright, Web Site and Comment fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.
- 8. Do not modify the **RSS** settings (¹). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click **Next**.

Step 3 of 6 - Customization

6. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| | Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a cu the "Configure" dalog and a custom icon in the SCR | stom image in file. |
|---|---|------------------------|
| 2 | C:\axials\ax screensaver c) | |
| | er/faces-26.ico | |

Step 4 of 6 - Splash screen

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| - | Splash Screen |
|---|--|
| | When the Screen Saver starts, it displays a splash screen for a few seconds. By default it displays a text splash screen with the information from the previous screen, but you can specify a custon image (BMP, JPEC, PMG) to replace the text in n. |
| - | No Splash Screen Display a Text Splash Screen Display an Image based Splash Screen: |
| • | Display Time 2 |
| 0 | 2 Seconds |

8. Choose the option **Display a Text Splash Screen** (**1**). In the **Display Time** group (**2**), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click **Next**.

Step 5 of 6 - Preview window

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver). See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info (see "How to install a screensaver"). In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the Flash movie!

| - | Preview Wi | ndow |
|------------|--|---|
| | When the user select appears in a small pre- preview is displayed t standard static image | s a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it vriew window. By default, a reduced anim. V you can also specify a custom or a |
| | Animated Preview | (real preview of the screen saver) |
| | 😑 No Preview - Defa | ault Image |
| 17 | 😑 No Preview - Cusl | tom Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | | |
| | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Video streamaners (final user may experience technical issue). |
| - | | Image recommanded size is 152 s 112 pixels. |
| | | |
| •••avialis | | (makes) (must |

10. Choose the option Animated Preview (1). When done, click Next.

Step 6 of 6 - Ready to go

- 11. A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the compilation summary. If something is wrong, you can go back to the previous screens by clicking Previous button. Also, read the information about Copyright.
- 10. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

12. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine [we're sure it did :)], the following screen is displayed:

CORPORATE EDITION

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|-------------------|---|---|
| - | Compilation | |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compiling your project | |
| | V Creating Temporary Files | |
| | V Compressing Images | |
| | Writing SCR file | |
| | Verifying Screen Saver File | |
| | I empilation Successfully Completed. | |
| 0 | Test the Properties Dialog Box Now | ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~ |
| axialis | Clos | e |

- 13. You can test the screensaver fullscreen now. Click on the Test the Screen Saver Now button (1). Do you like? This is YOUR screensaver now.
- 14. You can also test the screensaver Properties dialog box. See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info about the properties/configure dialog box (see "How to install a screensaver", button "Settings"). Click on the **Test the Properties Dialog Box Now** button (2).
- **15.** As you chose to install this screensaver as Windows® default (in Step 1), it will start automatically after a certain period of inactivity of your computer (depends on what you've configured in Windows® Control Panel). Click **Close** to finish.

Lesson 3.7 - Creating an install package

We've learned how to compile a project and create a SCR screensaver. However, installing this screensaver on a computer could be a bit difficult for an unexperienced user. That's why we recommend you to create an install package with your screensaver especially if you wish to redistribute it. In this lesson we'll learn ho to compile the screensaver (like we did in previous lesson) and create an install package during the same procedure. Creating an installation package is done in 9 steps:

Step 1 of 9 - Filenames and location

 Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or click on the Compile Installable Screen Saver button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Before we start, keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| | Filenames and Location You are about to create a new installable screensaver. First, it will be compiled as a SCR file, then induded in an installation package. |
|---|--|
| | Screensaver File |
| | Please specify the final filename of the screensaver (the 2) name of the SCR file after the installation): |
| 1 | Şoreensaver: Tutorial1 .SCR |
| | Installation File |
| 7 | Specify the name and the location of the installation file that will be created: |
| | Elename: Tutoria1Install |
| 0 | Location: E:\ |
| | |

- 2. In the Screensaver field (2), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). Keep the proposed name "Tutorial3". This is the filename that will be installed on the end-user computer. This file will not be created on your computer during this compilation. It will be embedded in the install package.
- 3. In the Filename field (③), specify the name of the Install file to create (do not specify the EXE extension). Enter this filename: "Tutorial3Install". In the Location field (④), specify the folder where you want to create the install file on your computer. You can use the button [...] to browse your folders. When done, click Next.

Step 2 of 9 - Installation package properties

4. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the Language field (①), select "Automatic (based on Windows settings)". You can here choose the desired language for the screensaver and install procedure. 8 languages are supported: English, French, Spanish, German, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch and Russian. By selecting Automatic, the install procedure will choose the language by itself based on the end-user Windows language. You can also force a specific language.

| Installat | ion Package Properties | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| The installation force a particul | procedure supports several languages. You ar language or let the program choose at run | 0 |
| Language: | Automatic (Based on Windows Settings) | - |
| The final packa | ge can be a single solid file or a set of files: | 0 |
| Pagkage: | Solid Install (one file - Internet or CFROM) | ~ |
| Advanced The install Wizard in | Layout Customization ation procedure layout can be customized: age, install icon, options, text color | 6 |
| | Installat The installation force a particul Language: The final packa Pagkage: Advanced The instal Wizard im | Installation Package Properties The installation procedure supports several languages. You force a particular language or let the program choose at not Language: Automatic (Based on Windows Settings) The final package can be a single solid file or a set of files: Pagkage: Solid Instal (one file - Internet or CO-ROM) Advanced Layout Eustomization The installation procedure layout can be customized: Witard mage, install icon, options, text color |

5. In the Package field (2), specify "Solid Install". See context help [?] for more information on this field.

6. Do not change the Advanced Customization settings (3). This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 3 of 9 - User license agreement

7. The third dialog box opens (see below). It permits you to specify a **User License Agreement**. If you choose to include a license agreement, the user will be prompted to accept it during the installation procedure. It he refuses it, the install procedure ends. In this tutorial, we'll choose to include the default user license agreement.

| Compile an Inst | allable Screen Saver - Step 3 of 9 | ? X |
|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| 9 | Vou can specify a User License Agreement text that w dsplayed before the installation starts. O ser must this agreement to proceed. | il be agree with |
| | carefully before installing the program. By installing the program, you accept the terms of this Agreement. If not agree to the terms of this Agreement, quit this in procedure and promptly delete the files. 1. COPYRIGHT The "(ScreenSaverT) green Saver (the "Softwar comed by (ScreenSaverT) agreen Saver (the "Softwar | re") is |
| | Lotte Sale LoadDefau | It Cancel |

8. Choose the option Add a User License Agreement (1). In the edit zone below you see the default agreement (2). It is multi-languages. This is only a proposal that you can customize (3). See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

Step 4 of 9 - Screensaver Information

7. A new dialog box opens (see below). In the **Title** field (**1**), keep the proposed title "**Tutorial1**". We always recommend you to keep the proposed title (which is the one you specified when you created the screensaver).

| | Screen You can cust Copyright, W | saver Information omize your screen saver by specify /eb link, Comment as well as RSS fe | ng a Title, 1 ed URLs. |
|---|--|--|----------------------------------|
| | Ţitie: | Tutorial3 | 1 |
| | Copyright: | ight © 2004 Axials Software | \ |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.avialis.com | 1 |
| - | Company: | Axialis Software | -0 |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver | 1 |
| 0 | RSS: | Enable RSS R 🚯 🗌 Spe | cify URLs |

- 7. Specify your own data in Copyright, Web Site, Company and Comment fields (2). See context help [?] for more information on these fields.
- 8. Do not modify the **RSS** settings (¹). RSS is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. When done, click **Next**.

Step 5 of 9 - Screensaver Customization

9. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Customization settings. This dialog box is used to customize the icon (1) of the screensaver as well as the image (2) displayed in the configure dialog box. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| 17 | Screensaver Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dialog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|----|--|
| | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box:) |
| | citanialstax screensaver c |
| | Recommended Image size is 400 or 50 plants. Only BMP, IVEG and DHMS formats are topported. Use a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file: |
| - | el/faus-26.ico |
| 9 | Custom kone must only and exactly contain the following image formats: • Vicili, 256 colors - 34:15, XP format · 32:32, 256 colors - 32:32, XP format · 41:46, 255 colors - 44:46, XP format |

Step 6 of 9 - Splash screen

10. A new dialog box opens (see below). A splash screen is a small window that will be displayed for short period of time before the screen saver starts. This feature permits you to display the name of the screensaver, your name, a copyright notice or the logo of your company. See <u>this topic</u> to read more about this feature. In this tutorial, we choose to display a **Text splash screen**. It will display the name of the screensaver and the copyright notice (you specified in Step 2).

| Splas | h Scree | n | | |
|---|---|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| When the seconds. informati image (B | Screen Saver By default it d in from the pre IP, JPEG, PNG | starts, it disp splays a text rvious screen,) to replace th | lays a splash screi splash screen with but you can spec e text n. | en for a few i the ify a custom |
| No 5 Displ Displ | lash Screen y a Text Splas y an Image ba | h Screen) ised Splash Sc | reen: | _ |
| | | | Display Time | .0 |
| | | | 2 500 | onds |
| | | | 2 . Sec | one |

11. Choose the option **Display a Text Splash Screen** (1). In the **Display Time** group (2), specify 2 seconds. The splash screen will be displayed as text for 2 seconds. When done, click **Next**.

Step 7 of 9 - Preview window

12. A new dialog box opens (see below). You can specify here the kind of preview you wish for the screensaver. The preview window is displayed in the Windows Control Panel when (you change of screensaver). See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info (see "How to install a screensaver"). In this tutorial, we choose to display an **Animated Preview** of the screensaver. You'll see a real preview of the Flash movie!

| | Preview W | indow |
|----|---|--|
| | appears in a small pr preview is displayed standard static imag | e. |
| J. | Animated Previe No Preview - Del No Preview - Cu | w (real preview of the screen saver) fault Image stom Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | | |
| | 3 | Consideration of the second sec |
| - | | Image recommanded |

13. Choose the option Animated Preview (**1**). When done, click Next.

Step 8 of 9 - Activation code

14. A new dialog box opens (see below). Do not modify the Activation code settings. This dialog box is used to create demo or limited versions of your screensavers. This is a useful feature if you want to sell your screensavers. This is an advanced feature which is not part of this tutorial. See this topic to read more about this feature. When done, click Next.

| | Activation Co Using this feature you'll Activation Code to get t Codes will be generated | be able to force the he full version | user to enter an e Screen Saver. The wing ID numbers. |
|------|---|---|---|
| -Щ 🐎 | 📒 Use an Activation Co | ode | |
| | Şcreen Saver ID: | Company/Author | ID: |
| | 12A84044 | FFE77CFC | Advanced |
| | Code Based on | User Name | |
| | Limitations (b | efore activation) | 1 |
| - | Copiration 0 | Date (after Trial Peri | od) |
| a X | ejpres | 30 🗯 days al | ter installation |
| - | 💮 Limited num | ber of Sprites/Side | 6 |
| - | limbed to | o 5 📮 sprite | is or slides |
| | | | |
Step 9 of 9 - Ready to go

- 15. A new dialog box opens (see below). This is the last screen before the compilation starts. Nothing to specify here. Just take a look at the compilation summary. If something is wrong, you can go back to the previous screens by clicking Previous button. Also, read the information about Copyright.
- 16. When done, click Next.

Compilation in progress... and done

17. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine, the following screen is displayed:

| Compile an Installa | able Screen Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|---------------------|--|-----|
| | Compilation | |
| | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compling your project | |
| | Compling SCR file, Compressing images | |
| | V Compressing SCR file | |
| | V Creating EXE Installation Package | |
| | Verfying Package Files | |
| | Compilation Successfully Completed. | |
| D | list the Indialition Perlage Street | |
| Maxialis | Close | |

17. You can test the installation package now. Click on the Test the Installation Package Now button (1). The install procedure starts, just follow it. It will install the screensaver on your computer. This is exactly whet the end user will do. Convenient, isn't it? Click Close to finish.

The tutorial is done

We hope you enjoyed the creation of this first screensaver. If you want to see if the project you've done is correct, you can open our version to compare them: "...\Axialis Librarian\Screen Savers\Tutorials\Tutorial3.ssp".

We also have two other similar tutorials to show you how to create <u>sprite</u> and <u>slideshow</u> screensavers... Have fun!

CHAPTER 3 How To Procedures

In this chapter

- How to quickly create a sprite screensaver
- How to quickly create a slideshow screensaver
 - How to quickly create a Flash® screensaver
 - How to quickly create a video screensaver
- How to create a simple "bouncing logo" screensaver
 - How to work efficiently with Photoshop® ■
- How to create a limited demo/shareware screensaver
 - How to add a RSS reader in a screensaver
 - How to customize a screensaver icon ■
 - How to customize a screensaver illustration image
 - How to install a SCR screensaver on a computer
 - How to quietly install a screensaver on a computer

How to quickly create a sprite screensaver...

A built-in Explorer permits you to browse your computer folders with thumbnail preview, select files and quickly create a screensaver!

Open the built-in Explorer, select the files

1. In the menu, choose File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E). An explorer window opens in the application:



- The window is divided in two parts. The separator can be moved using the mouse. On the left pane, use the folder tree to browse and find the desired folder (1). In the right pane, you see a thumbnail the media files present in this folder (2). Images and video files are shown with preview. You also see Flash and sound files (without preview).
- **3. Select the images** files you want to add as sprite in your screensaver. It includes standard images, icons, cursors and animated GIFs. If you want to add a background music, select a music or sound file (MP3, WAV, MID...).

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

Create the screensaver

- Click on the New Screen Saver Project From Selection (F7) button (8) or choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project From Selection in the menu.
- 5. A dialog box opens. Select Sprite Based Screen Saver option in the list. Click Next.
- 6. In this new dialog box, enter the screensaver title and some additional information (copyright, author...). Click Next when done.

Customize and compile the screensaver

- 7. The screensaver project window opens with all sprites added in the main edit zone. Select each sprite in the list and adjust the associated properties: motion, size & position, collision, transparency...
- 8. For example, if you want to create a bouncing sprite: Choose Straight Line and Bouncing on the edges of the screen options. Set the direction and speed of the sprite. We can do this by specifying 2 values: The Horizontal and Vertical speeds. Specify any data from -500 to +500. You can also randomize the speed (see options on right). When done, click OK. To learn more about sprite screensavers, we recommend you to follow this tutorial.
- **9.** We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press **F11** or click the **Full Screen** button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.
- 10. Save your project by choosing File/Save or by pressing Ctrl+S.
- 11. Now you can compile your screensaver or compile and create an installation package.

How to quickly create a slideshow screensaver...

A built-in Explorer permits you to browse your computer folders with thumbnail preview, select files and quickly create a screensaver!

Open the built-in Explorer, select the files

 In the menu, choose File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E). An explorer window opens in the application:



- The window is divided in two parts. The separator can be moved using the mouse. On the left pane, use the folder tree to browse and find the desired folder (1). In the right pane, you see a thumbnail the media files present in this folder (2). Images and video files are shown with preview. You also see Flash and sound files (without preview).
- **3. Select the images** files you want to add as slides in your screensaver. We recommend you to use JPEG image files but you can also add BMP, PNG, icons, cursors and GIFs. If you want to add a background music, select a music or sound file (MP3, WAV, MID...).

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

Create the screensaver

- Click on the New Screen Saver Project From Selection (F7) button (3) or choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project From Selection in the menu.
- 5. A dialog box opens. Select Slide Show Screen Saver option in the list. Click Next.
- 6. In this new dialog box, enter the screensaver title and some additional information (copyright, author...). Click Next when done.

Customize and compile the screensaver

- 7. The screensaver project window opens with all the files added in the slide list area. Now select the slides and adjust display delay, transitions, scale... Specify also the screensaver display properties. To learn more about slideshow screensavers, we recommend you to follow <u>this tutorial</u>.
- 8. Now take a look at the result full screen. Press F11 or click the Full Screen button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed full screen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.
- 9. Save your project by choosing File/Save or by pressing Ctrl+S.
- 10. Now you can compile your screensaver or compile and create an installation package.

How to quickly create a Flash® screensaver...

A built-in Explorer permits you to browse your computer folders with thumbnail preview, select files and quickly create a screensaver!

Open the built-in Explorer, select the files

1. In the menu, choose File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E). An explorer window opens in the application:



- The window is divided in two parts. The separator can be moved using the mouse. On the left pane, use the folder tree to browse and find the desired folder (1). In the right pane, you see a thumbnail the media files present in this folder (2). Images and video files are shown with preview. You also see Flash and sound files (without preview).
- 3. Select the Flash® movie you want to add in your screensaver.

<u>REMARK</u>: Only one Flash® movie can be included in the screensaver.

Create the screensaver

- 4. Click on the New Screen Saver Project From Selection (F7) button (³) or choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project From Selection in the menu.
- 5. A dialog box opens. Select Flash® Based Screen Saver option in the list. Click Next.
- 6. In this new dialog box, enter the screensaver title and some additional information (copyright, author...). Click Next when done.

Customize and compile the screensaver

- 7. The screensaver project window opens with the Flash® file selected. Now specify the screensaver display properties. To learn more about Flash® screensavers, we recommend you to follow this tutorial.
- **8.** We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press **F11** or click the **Full Screen** button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.
- 9. Save your project by choosing File/Save or by pressing Ctrl+S.
- 10. Now you can compile your screensaver or compile and create an installation package.

How to quickly create a video screensaver...

A built-in Explorer permits you to browse your computer folders with thumbnail preview, select files and quickly create a screensaver!

Open the built-in Explorer, select the files

1. In the menu, choose File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E). An explorer window opens in the application:



The window is divided in two parts. The separator can be moved using the mouse. On the left pane, use the folder tree to browse and find the desired folder (1). In the right pane, you see a thumbnail the media files present in this folder (2). Images and video files are shown with preview. You also see Flash and sound files (without preview).

3. Select the video files you want to add in your screensaver. A video screensaver can include several video files that will be played in sequence. Be careful of the final size of your screensaver though!

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

Create the screensaver

- Click on the New Screen Saver Project From Selection (F7) button (⁶) or choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project From Selection in the menu.
- 5. A dialog box opens. Select Video Based Screen Saver option in the list. Click Next.
- 6. In this new dialog box, enter the screensaver title and some additional information (copyright, author...). Click Next when done.

Customize and compile the screensaver

- 7. The screensaver project window opens with all the files added in the video list. Now you can simply adjust display settings of the screensaver. To learn more about video screensavers, see <u>this tutorial</u> about Flash based screensavers creation (which is very close to video based screensavers).
- 8. Now take a look at the result fullscreen. Press F11 or click the Full Screen button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.
- 9. Save your project by choosing File/Save or by pressing Ctrl+S.
- 10. Now you can compile your screensaver or compile and create an installation package.

How to create a simple "bouncing logo" screensaver...

If you want to promote your company, creating a simple screensaver with your logo bouncing on the edges of the screen is so simple!

Create the Project

- In the menu, choose File/New/New Screen Saver Project, a dialog box opens. Select the "Sprite Based Screen Saver" type in the list and click Next. A second dialog box opens:
- 2. Specify the Screensaver Title: "MyBouncingLogo". Also specify your own Description, Author Name, Copyright information and click Next.

<u>REMARK</u>: Click on the context help button (2) to get more information on a specific area in the dialog box.

A black background

- **3.** In the WYSIWYG **editor window**, double-click (using the left button) or right-click and select "Properties" or choose **Project/Screen Background** menu command.
- 4. A **Project Properties** dialog box opens (**Background** tab is selected). Select the **Solid Color** option and choose **Black**.

Add the logo (sprite)

- 5. First, you need to create a nice image of your company logo. Create this image in an external program like <u>Photoshop</u>® (professional tool), <u>Paint Shop Pro</u>® (shareware tool) or <u>Gimp</u>® (free tool). Crop your image just around your logo. Do not leave a black space around the logo. Use the real colors (24 bits), not 16 or 256 colors. If you know how to create 32 bit images with alpha channel, the result will be better. If not, add a black background to your company logo too. Save it to BMP or PNG file.
- 6. Return in the application, select your project document if necessary. Choose in the menu: Project/New Sprite (Ins) or click the New Sprite button in the local toolbar. A standard Windows dialog box opens. Search an select your file. Click Open. The logo is added in the center of the screensaver.

Set the sprite motion parameters

- 7. Now we're going to make the sprite move on screen. Double-click on the logo sprite. A dialog opens. Select the **Motion** tab if necessary.
- 8. Choose Straight Line and Bouncing on the edges of the screen options.
- Now we'll set the direction and speed of the sprite. We can do this by specifying 2 values: The Horizontal and Vertical speeds. Specify 40 in Horizontal speed and -40 in Vertical speed. When done, click OK.
- **10.** We can take a look at the result fullscreen. Press **F11** or click the **Full Screen** button in the toolbar. The screensaver is executed fullscreen. Press a key or move the mouse to end the full screen test.
- 11. Save your project by choosing File/Save or by pressing Ctrl+S.
- 12. Now you can compile your screensaver or compile and create an installation package.

How to work efficiently with Photoshop®...

Adobe Photoshop® is actually the industry standard in image creation. That's why we made a Photoshop® plug-in that will permit you to transfer your images directly to Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer without creating temporary PSD image files. This great feature will permit you to work efficiently and create high quality screensavers.

Install the Photoshop® plug-in

- 1. The first time you've started the application, you probably have been prompted to install the plugin (if Photoshop was installed). If you did not choose to install this plugin or installed Photoshop® later, please follow step 2. Otherwise, go to step 6.
- 2. Before installing the plug-in we recommend you to close the Photoshop® application (if it is actually opened in background). Choose File/Install Photoshop® Plug-in...

CORPORATE EDITION

3. The dialog box Install the Photoshop Transfer Plug-in opens (see below). In the Location edit zone (1), specify the Photoshop plug-in folder. If you don't know the exact folder path, click the browse button (2) to choose the folder in a list.

| nstairtne | Photosnop | ly transfer Plug-in | ? > |
|-----------|---|--|------------------------------|
| R | Axialis Profe permit you b without usin | ssional Screen Saver Producer includes a powerful featu o transfer images directly from Adobe Photoshop@ thro g a temporary PSD file. See help for more info. | ire which will ugh memory |
| \sim | In order to a Adobe Photo | activate this feature, you have to install an Axialis modul oshop@ plug-in directory. | le in your |
| | The a | ion suggests you to install the plug-in at the location spe pB is installed on your computer). You can specify an all pring it or browsing your disks: | ternate |
| | Location: | Install the plug-in file in a sub-folder "Axialis" | |
| 6 | This pl compar Adobe | ag-in can be used with various paint applications. These program bile with Photoshop@plog-ins (Jasc Paint Shop Pro@), Adobe Ele Illustrator@)See help for more info. | : must be iments®, |
| | 10.00 | | |

- 4. If you want to create a subfolder "Axialis" to install the plug-in module (recommended to organize your folder properly), activate the option "Install in a subfolder Axialis" (³). Note that creating a subfolder may fail with some compatible applications.
- 5. Click OK. When done, a message informs you that the plug-in has been installed.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can install the Plug-in in various other compatible applications. See your application help file for more info on how to proceed. If Photoshop® is installed on your computer, the plug-in folder will be automatically added to the edit zone.

Use the Photoshop® plug-in

6. Using Photoshop, create your image like shown below (1). For better results we recommend you to create an image with smooth transparency (2). For example the image below is featured with a cyan outer glow. Only the selected layer contents will be transferred (3).



7. In the menu (④), select Filter/Axialis/Transfer To Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer. The Axialis application automatically starts (or activates if already running in background) and a dialog box prompts you to choose an action:

| mage Tran | sfer From Adobe Photoshop - Options | ? | × |
|-----------|---|----------------------|-----|
| TEL | You are about to transfer an image from Adobe Photoshop compatible application) to Avialis Professional Screen Save | o® (or a r Produc | er. |
| Ex | How do you want to use this image? | | |
| C. | Create a new Image Document | | |
| | A new document containing this image will be created. | | |
| | Create a New Screen Saver using this image as sprit | e | |
| | A sprite based screen saver project will be created from this (the image will be the first sprite added to the project). | image | |
| 6 | Paste the image in the current Screen Saver project | | |
| | The image will be parted in the current screen saver project (just like using the Clipboard). | window | |
| | Do not prompt in the future (first option by default) | | |
| maxia | | ncel |) |

- 8. Choose Create a New Screen Saver using this image as sprite option (1) to create a new screensaver. By choosing this action, you'll add this image as the first sprite in the screensaver. If you want to add this image in an existing (and already opened) screensaver project, select Paste the image option (2).
- **9.** For example, choose **Create a New Screen Saver** and click **OK**. A second dialog box opens. Specify the requested information (title, author...) and Click Next. A new screensaver is created with the image added as sprite:



10. The sprite is added in the center of the edit window (1) and is also visible in the sprite list (2). Now you can adjust the sprite properties: motion, size & position, collision, transparency... To learn more about sprite screensavers, we recommend you to follow this tutorial.

How to create a limited demo/shareware screensaver...

With Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer you can create shareware versions of your screensavers. It means that these versions can be used for a limited period of time by a user for test purpose. When this period is over the user has to purchase it or un-install it.

When the user purchases the screensaver you just have to send him an activation code (that you've generated with this program too) to transform the trial version in a fully working version. You'll be able to generate Activation Codes using a built-in feature (Alt+F6). Click <u>here</u> to read more about activation codes.

Compile the screensaver in shareware mode

IMPORTANT: You can create demo/limited versions of your screensaver only if you create an installation package of your screensaver. If you compile a simple screensaver, you cannot add this feature.

- 1. Open your screensaver project. Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or click on the Compile Installable Screen Saver button in the toolbar.
- 2. The first dialog box of the compilation wizard opens. Follow the procedure until **Step 8** "Activation Code" (see below)



- 3. If you want to create a limited screensaver, you must click on the Use an Activation Code option (1). The other fields of the dialog box enable.
- 4. Below you see 2 fields with IDs (2). The IDs that are proposed here are based on the screensaver title and the company name you entered. Of course you can change them but don't forget them once the screensaver is compiled. You'll need them to generate activation codes for the users. You'll be able to <u>Generate Activation Codes</u> using a built-in feature after the compilation (Alt+F6).
 - In the Screen Saver ID area, specify the Screen Saver ID (an 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits) that will be used to generate the Activation Codes. Two IDs are used to generate the codes: The Screen Saver ID (which is different for each library you compiled) and the Company ID (which is constant but differs for another company). This number is proposed but you can modify it (recommended).

- In the Company ID area, specify the Company ID (another 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits) that will be used to generate the Activation Codes. This number is proposed but you can modify it (recommended). However, if you modify it, we recommend you to keep the same Company ID for all the screensavers you'll compile.
- 5. Click Code based on User Name (⁶) if you want to use the customer name to generate codes. Click <u>here</u> to read more about activation codes.
- 6. In the Limitations group (④) you can specify if you want to create a Time Limited screensaver or a Sprite/Slide Limited screensaver.
- 5. Some advanced parameters permits you to fully customize the trial version of your screensaver. To access these parameters, click the Advanced button (6). Another dialog box opens.

Specify Advanced Parameters

- In the Version Name zone, specify the name of the limited version. Usually: 'Shareware Version', 'Trial Edition', 'Demo Version'...
- 7. In the **Registration URL** zone, specify the Web Address of your purchase web page (for example: http://www.axialis.com/purchase). This Web Address will be used in the 'Properties' dialog box as a real hyperlink (the user will be able to click on it to register).
- 8. In the Registration Text zone, specify the Registration Text. This text will be displayed in the upper-left corner of the limited version of the screensaver. Once the screensaver is activated, this text is hidden. Since the user can activate the screensaver using the A key and register using the R key, adding a reminder in this text is a good idea: "Press 'A' to enter your activation code. Press 'R' to register". This text can be localized.

Information about Localization

The text can be localized using macros (placed in the text body) that permit you to define conditional portions. A conditional portion begins with #if and ends with a #endif. If a text line is not in a conditional portion, it is always displayed. Example:

```
#if ENGLISH
... Text using english language ...
#endif
... Text always displayed ...
#if FRENCH
... Text using french language ...
#endif
```

Actually, 8 language macros are supported: ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, SPANISH, DUTCH, ITALIAN, PORTUGUESE and RUSSIAN.

- 9. In the Registration Text zone, specify the Expiration Text. This text will be displayed in the upper-left corner of the screen if the trial period is over. Once the screensaver is activated, this text is hidden. Since the user can activate the screensaver using the A key and register using the R key, adding a reminder in this text is a good idea: "Press 'A' to enter your activation code. Press 'R' to register". This text can be localized.
- **10.** If the **"Enter Activation Code During Installation"** box is checked, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code (and eventually his name) during the installation of the screensaver. You can configure this option as a proposal or an obligation by choosing an option below.
 - If the "Propose To Enter Code" option is chosen, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code during install but will be able to bypass this step. He will be able to activate it later during use. In this case, this step is a proposal, NOT an obligation.
 - If the "Force To Enter Code" option is chosen, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code to proceed with installation. In this case, this step is an obligation, NOT a proposal.

11. When done, click OK.

Compile the installation package

12. Now finish the compilation process of the screensaver. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine, the following screen is displayed:

| Compile an Instal | able Screen Saver - Compilation | ? | × |
|-------------------|--|----|---|
| | Compilation | | |
| 0 | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compling your project | | |
| | Compling SCR file, Compressing images | | |
| | Compressing SCR file | | |
| | Creating EXE Installation Package | | |
| | Verifying Package Files | | |
| | Compilation Successfully Completed. | .0 | |
| D | Inst the Instellation Pedrogenter | | |
| maxialis | Clos | e | 3 |

13. You can test the installation package now. Click on the Test the Installation Package Now button (●). The install procedure starts, just follow it. It will install the screensaver on your computer. This is exactly whet the end user will do. Click Close to finish. Once the demo/limited screensaver starts, it display the message you've specified to ask the user to register.

Generate activation codes

To send an activation code to the user who purchased, you have to generate it. The application includes a feature that permits you can generate Activation Codes for previously compiled Screen Savers. You can generate two kinds of Activation Codes: Based on User Name (one code generated for each user) or in serial (a list of codes ban be generated).

You can generate activation codes at any time. You don't need to open a screen saver project to generate codes. You just need the Company ID and the Screen Saver ID you used during the compilation (see above).

 To open the Generate Activation Codes dialog box, choose Edit / Generate Activation Codes or press Alt+F6. A large dialog box opens.

How to add a RSS reader in a screensaver...

With Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer you can screensavers with a RSS reader embedded. RSS, which means "Really Simple Syndication", is a new way to publish information online. Think of it as a distributable "What's New" for your site.

At the heart of the technology is special Web coding, called XML, which has been widely developed by the online community over the past few years. Anyone can pick up the RSS codes and with the appropriate software display the information.

A RSS reader is included in the screensavers you will compile. You just have to create your own online RSS feeds (see tutorial link below) and add the URLs to them in the above list. Adding RSS news in your screensaver is a great idea.

Add a RSS reader in a screensaver

IMPORTANT: If your screensaver includes a RSS reader, it will attempt to access the Internet. This may pop-up a firewall alert on the end-user computer. An Internet access may be considered as suspicious by the this user (malicious codes like virus or trojans act like this). We strongly recommend to inform the end-user about this.

- 1. Open your screensaver project. It works with all kind of screensavers (sprite, Flash, slideshow, video). Compile it either as SCR or as Install Package. Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4).
- 2. The first dialog box of the compilation wizard opens. Follow the procedure until Step 2
 "Description" (see below) if you choose to compile a SCR file or until Step 4 "Screensaver
 Information" if you choose to create an install package.

| You can cu Copyrright, | ption storike your screen saver by specifying a Title, Web link, Comment as well as RS5 feed URLs. |
|---------------------------|--|
| Ditle: | Tutoriali |
| Copyright: | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights res |
| Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com |
| Comment: | This is a test screensaver - Please do not a distribute |
| BSS Feeds | Enable RSS Read Specify URLs_ |

3. To activate the RSS reader and specify feeds, in the RSS feeds zone, click on the Enable RSS Reader option (2). The Specify URLs button is activated. Click on this button, a second dialog box opens:

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer

CORPORATE EDITION

| Source URLs (one URL per line): | | |
|---|--|--|
| http://www.axiaks.com/irss/ | 0 | 2 |
| Allow the user to change, ad Mont is PSS2 | id or remove URLs 🌨 | ~0 |
| Depending on who you ask, R Simple Syndication." But no m information online. Think of it | ISS stands for either " atter what it's called, I as a distributable "Wh | Rich Site Summary" or "Really RSS is a new way to publish at's New" for your site. |
| At the heart of the technolog widely developed by the onlin pick up the RSS codes and wit | y is special Web codin e community over the h the appropriate soft | g, called XML, which has been past few years. Anyone can ware display the information. |
| A RSS reader is included in the create your own online RSS for them in the above list. Adding | e screensavers you wi eeds (see tutorial link t RSS news in your scr | II comple. You just have to below) and add the URLs to eensaver is a great idea. |
| Avials RSS Fee | ds 🕥 855. | Tutorial for Webmasters |
| avialis | | (III) Cancal |

3. In the Source URLs zone (**0**), enter the feed URLs you wish to use in the reader. Specify one URL per line. The reader will downloads the news in all URLs when the screensaver starts and display them all in sequence.

You can also specify **UNC network paths** to XML files. It could be useful to publish news via the screensaver on all the computers installed in your company. For example, specify: "**MainServer\CommonFiles\News\daily-news.xml**"

- If you want to allow the user to modify these URLs (add/remove) once the screensaver is installed, click on the associated option (2). When done click OK. Continue with the compilation wizard.
- **5.** Once the compiled screensaver is installed, the RSS reader will access the internet each time it starts (in background), get the news and display them is a small window in the lower-right corner of the screen:



<u>REMARK</u>: The end user can enable/disable the RSS reader and change URLs (if you allowed it) from the screensaver "configure" dialog box.

How to customize a screensaver icon...

A screensaver is a program (see <u>What is a screensaver</u>). Therefore, it contain an icon. This icon is used to display it in Windows Explorer or when you create a Shortcut to it in the Desktop for example. A standard icon is used but it's now possible to customize it.

What is an icon?

An icon is a graphic image, a small picture or object that represents a file, program, web page, or command. Icons help you execute commands, open programs or documents quickly. To execute a command by using an icon, click or double-click on the icon. It is also useful to recognize quickly an object in a browser list.

That's almost all you need to know if you only use icons. But you want to use (or create) icons for the screensaver customization feature, you need to know more about them.

What are the differences between an image and an icon?

A computer image is a bitmap (composed of pixels) or vector (composed of drawing paths) picture, which can be saved using various formats (BMP, PNG, GIF, JPEG, WMF...). All these formats have several different properties (bitmaps, vectors, compressed, layered, animated...) and can be used to store pictures at any sizes and resolution.

Icons are different from standard images. They are have standard sizes (usually small): 16x16, 32x32, 48x48... One icon is composed of several images. Each of them with a different size and number of colors (mono, 16 colors, 256 colors, 16.8M...). And the most important property of an icon is the ability to include transparent areas. This allows seeing the screen background behind the icon within its square image.

What is the structure of an icon?

As we've seen in previous paragraph, an icon is a group of images of various formats (size and colors). Furthermore, each image can include transparent area. That's why you'll find a transparent color in the drawing palette for 16 or 256 color images and a variable opacity parameter for the new Windows XP format (opacity = 0 means transparent).



Example of icon containing various image formats

What kind of icons can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the icon must be Windows compliant (ICO format) contain <u>at least</u> the following image formats:

| 16x16 - 256 colors | 16x16 - Windows XP |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| • 32x32 - 256 colors | • 32x32 - Windows XP |
| - 10 10 057 1 | -40.40 W/ 1 VD |

48x48 - 256 colors
 48x48 - Windows XP

How to create my own icons?

Axialis Software has released an icon editor that will permit you to easily create your own icons in a few minutes: <u>Axialis IconWorkshop</u>. This professional tool will permit to create icons with several formats from images in a few clicks. You can download a shareware version <u>here</u> and test it for 30 days.

Customize the screensaver icon

- 1. Once your compatible icon is ready and saved in as an ICO file on your disk, open your screensaver project. Compile it either as SCR or as Install Package. Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4).
- The first dialog box of the compilation wizard opens. Follow the procedure until Step 3
 "Screensaver Customization" if you choose to compile a SCR file (see below) or until Step 5
 if you choose to create an install package.

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Step 3 of 6 ? 3 |
|-------------------|---|
| | Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dailog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
| | (cr)arstells/ax screenssver() |
| | Uge a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file: |
| 9 | Contorn loors must only and assamy contain- the following image formats: - Weak, 25K exites - 312-202, 9K format - 312-82, 25K exites - 312-202, 9K format - 410-86, 25K exites - 440-96, 9K format |

- 3. Click on the option Use a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file to activate it (2). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **4.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your ICO file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 5. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the icon image in the window on right.
- **6.** If this is the right icon, click **Next**. If the icon has the correct format (see specs above), you can continue the compilation wizard. Finish the compilation and test it to see if the icon has been properly changed.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can also customize the icon of the install EXE file if you have chosen to create an installation package. The procedure is similar and the icon should have the same specs. Click on the **Advanced Customization** button in **Step 2** of the compilation wizard.

How to customize a screensaver illustration image...

A screensaver contains a Customize dialog box (see <u>What is a screensaver</u>). The application permits you to customize the illustration image that is included in this window $(\mathbf{0})$:



What kind of images can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the image file must have the JPEG, BMP or PNG format. Also, we recommend you to use an image with the following dimension: Width = 400, Height = 90.

How to create my illustration image?

Create this image using an external application like <u>Photoshop®</u> (professional tool), <u>Paint Shop Pro®</u> (shareware tool) or <u>Gimp®</u> (free tool).

Customize the screensaver image

- 1. Once your compatible icon is ready and saved in as an ICO file on your disk, open your screensaver project. Compile it either as SCR or as Install Package. Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4).
- 2. The first dialog box of the compilation wizard opens. Follow the procedure until Step 3
 "Screensaver Customization" if you choose to compile a SCR file (see below) or until Step 5
 if you choose to create an install package.

| | Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dalog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|---|--|
| | Ct[attalds]ax screensaver { |
| 9 | et/Faces-26.ico |

- **3.** Click on the option **Use a custom image in Configure dialog box** to activate it (**1**). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **4.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your image file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 5. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the image in the window on right.
- **6.** If this is the right image, click **Next**. You can continue the compilation wizard. Finish the compilation and test it to see if the image has been properly changed.

<u>**REMARK**</u>: You can also customize the image of the install EXE file if you have chosen to create an installation package. The procedure is similar and the image should be 500x60 pixels. Click on the **Advanced Customization** button in **Step 2** of the compilation wizard.

How to install a SCR screensaver on a computer...

How to install a screensaver on a Windows® computer?

If an install procedure is provided with the screensaver, just install it launching the procedure. When a screensaver is distributed as a simple SCR file, You have to follow this procedure to install it on a computer:

- 1. Copy the SCR file in your system folder. This folder vary with Windows version:
 - Windows XP/NT/2000 C:\WINNT\SYSTEM32
 - Windows 95/98/ME C:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM
- **2.** Right-click in the Windows Desktop background and select "Properties". A dialog box opens. Select the "Screen Saver" tab:



- Select your screensaver in the list (1). (it should appear in this list if you copied it in the correct folder). The screensaver appears in the Preview screen (2).
- 4. You can adjust the screensaver settings or display it fullscreen (3).
- 5. When all done, click **OK** (4)

How to un-install a screensaver?

If an un-install procedure is provided with the screensaver, just un-install it launching the procedure. When a screensaver is distributed as a simple SCR file, you have to locate the SCR file and delete it. You can also choose another screensaver (or simply specify "None") in the above list (**0**).

How to quietly install a screensaver on a computer...

If you've created an installation package for your screensaver, many command-line options are available to configure the install procedure. Options are specified after the EXE filename in the execution command-line.

How to quietly install a screensaver on a computer

In the command-line specify "/q" after the EXE install program name ("q" means "quiet"). For example:

Install /q

All the command-line options

The Screensaver Installer command-line syntax includes the following options:

| Option | Parameters | Definition |
|------------|------------|--|
| /? or /h | | Help - Displays a help screen. |
| /q | | Quiet Mode - Installs the screensaver quietly without user interface. If the installation failed the error code (ERRORLEVEL) returned by the install is 1. If it is successful, the returned value is 0. |
| / f | | Display the Progress and Final Screens - In quiet mode, displays the progress and the final notice screens to inform the user during the screensaver installation result. This option is ignored if the installation is not in quiet mode. |
| /d | [-] | Set as Default Screensaver - Set the installed screensaver as Windows® default screensaver. Specify "/d-" to clear the option. |
| /s | [-] | Create a Desktop Shortcut - Create a shortcut icon on the Windows® Desktop (to easily launch and test the screensaver). Specify "/s-" to clear the option. |
| / m | [-] | Create a Start Menu Entry - Creates an entry in the Windows® Start Menu (to easily launch the screensaver). Specify "/m-" to clear the option. |
| /p | [-] | Open Display Properties - Automatically open the Windows® display properties dialog box (to select and adjust the screensaver configuration). Specify "/p-" to clear the option. |
| / u | | Uninstall the Screensaver - Automatically uninstall the screensaver. |
| /x | | Windows® XP User Interface - Forces the installation to use a XP-like user interface. |
| /w | | Windows® ME/2000 User Interface - Forces the installation to use a standard ME/2000 user interface. |

Command-line examples

1. Automatically un-install the screensaver:

Install /u

2. Install the screensaver in quiet mode, set the screensaver as default Windows® screensaver and do NOT create a desktop shortcut icon:

Install /q /d /s-

3. Install the screensaver in quiet mode, display a progress dialog box and force use of the Windows® ME/2000 standard interface :

Install /w /q /f

CHAPTER 4 Creating Screen Savers

In this chapter

- Create a Sprite Based Screen Saver
- Create a Slideshow Based Screen Saver
 - Create a Flash[®] Based Screen Saver ■
- Create a FLI/FLC Animation Based Screen Saver
 - Compile a Screen Saver File (SCR) ■
 - Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (EXE)
 - Working with the Photoshop® Plug-in
 - Generate Activation Codes

Create a Sprite Based Screen Saver

A sprite is an animated or fixed object which moves or is static on screen. As the goal of a screensaver is to save screen pixels, it is better to use moving sprites (see "bouncing balls" example). The sprites can move on screen, be static, be animated (a spinning ball for example, composed of several images), bounce on the edge of the screen, collide with other sprites and more... The Sprite based screensaver is the most commonly used.

Create a sprite based screen saver project

To create a screen saver, you must create a Project first (.SSP file). Only this file can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window.

- 1. Choose File/New Screen Saver Project. A dialog box opens. Choose the type of screen saver to create: "Sprite based Screen Saver". The screen saver is composed of several animated sprites moving over a static background. Many effects available: sounds, collisions, bouncing effects...
- 2. Click on the Next Button. The "Create Screen Saver Project" dialog box opens. You can specify Screen saver and Author information in the areas: Title, Description, Name and Copyright.
- **3.** Click on the **Next** button. The application creates a new project with a default Gradient Background.

Adjust general display properties

Adjust general display properties

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.
- 2. Choose Project/Project Properties or click right, choose Properties and activate the Identity Tab.
- 3. In the Title area, specify the name of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **4.** In the **Author** area, specify the author of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 5. In the **Copyright** area, specify the copyright of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **6.** In the **Description** area, specify a description of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.

Add new sprites in the project

A sprite is a graphical object that can be static or animated. It can be based on an image or animation. See Animation File format or Image file format.

You can also add SSS files, which are Sprite files with full properties embedded. Sprite files (SSS extension) can be created by exporting sprites from a screensaver project.

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/New Sprites or right-click and choose New sprites.
- 3. Browse your disks and select the image files you wish to add. Click **Open.** The new sprites are added.

Add new sprites using Drag and Drop from the Librarian

- 1. Open the Screen Saver Document window.
- **2.** Select one or more sprites in the **Librarian** then **drag and drop** them to the Screen Saver Document window.



Add new sprites from the Explorer

- 1. Open a new Explorer window (Ctrl+E) or choose File/New/New Explorer.
- 2. Browse your disks and select the images you want to add as sprites.
- 3. Select Edit/Copy (Ctrl+C).
- 4. Open or select the Screen Saver Document window.
- 5. Select Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V). The new sprites are added.

<u>NOTES</u>: When you add sprites by using drag and drop from the librarian, the application automatically sets the sprite background to transparent. The upper left pixel color is used to determine the transparent color except the JPEG, JPG files (the background is opaque).

If you want to keep the sprite background when you add sprite, select the sprite, press **CTRL** then drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.

If you add a video file (FLI/FLC), the program prompts you that you are going to add an Autodesk FLI/FLC animation to the active project. You can choose to add it as a sprite or an independent window (like video clip). You can choose between two options:

Convert the Animation in sprite: The animation will be converted into a sprite with transparency. This is not recommended for large file.

■ Add the Animation as an Independent Window: The animation will be embedded in the screen saver as an independent window. The animation can be played once before the screen saver starts or forever with sprites playing in background.

If you add **an animated cursor file (ANI)**, the program will automatically add it as an animated sprite to the active project.

If you add **an icon or cursor files associated to several image formats**, the program prompts you to choose a file format. Then this file is automatically added as an animated sprite to the active project.

Change the sprite position

When you add new sprites, they are initially placed in the upper left corner of the Screen Saver working area. They can change the sprite Initial Position (X: Horizontal and Y: Vertical).

To change the Absolute Position

- 1. Select the sprite in the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- 3. Click on the Size and Position tab.
- **4.** In the **Absolute Position** group, enter here the **X coordinate of the Initial position of the sprite of screen** (from -640 to 1280).). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the sprite's hot spot on the screen (not necessary the position of the upper-left corner of the sprite see hot spot definition). Sprite initial position can also be specified using drag & drop in the screen saver document window.
- 5. In the Absolute Position Group, enter here the Y coordinate of the Initial position of the sprite on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top border and 480 the bottom border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the sprite's hot spot on the screen (not necessary the position of the upper-left corner of the sprite see hot spot definition). Sprite initial position can also be specified using drag & drop in the screen saver document window.

NOTES: The visible screen coordinates are always specified from (0,0: top-left) to (640,480: bottom-right). Of course if you launch your screen saver on a 1024x768 display for example, the sprites coordinates will be recalculated accordingly. You can specify a coordinate outside of the visible area to make a sprite initially hidden.

To change the Relative Position

- 1. Select the sprite in the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right Click and choose Properties.
- **3.** In the **Hot Spot Relative Position** group, enter here the **X (horizontal) relative position** of the hot spot within the sprite.
- **4.** In the **Hot Spot Relative Position** group, enter here the **Y (vertical) relative position** of the hot spot within the sprite.
- **5.** Click to specify the **hot spot relative position within the sprite**. When you click in the image, the X and Y values (at the bottom) are updated accordingly.

NOTE: The sprite position is defined by the absolute position of the hot spot (in the screen coordinates) and by the relative position of the hot spot within the sprite (in percent).

If relative position is (0%, 0%) the absolute position of the sprite is based on the position of the upper-left corner of the sprite.

If relative position is (100%, 100%) the absolute position of the sprite is based on the position of the bottom-right corner of the sprite.

By default the relative position is (50%, 50%): the center of the sprite.

Change the sprite size

Change the Sprite display size

- **1.** Select the sprite.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- 3. Click on the Size and Position tab.
- **4.** In the **Scale Group**, enter here the **width of the sprite in percent (100% by default)**. The final width is based on the original sprite bitmap width. Sprite width can also be changed using mouse in the screen saver document window.
- **5.** In the **Scale Group**, enter here the **height of the sprite in percent (100% by default)**. The final height is based on the original sprite bitmap height. Sprite height can also be changed using mouse in the screen saver document window.
- **6.** In the **Scale Group**, check the **Proportional to Screen** box if you want the application to automatically resize the sprite when running the screensaver on the user screen. The size of the sprite will be automatically calculated to keep the same display ratio on all screen resolutions.

<u>REMARK</u>: The size of the final sprite is calculated from a 640x480 screensaver project (the size of the WYSIWYG editor window). For example, if the final user launches the screen saver on a 800x600 display, the sprite size multiplier will be: 1.25. If his screen size is 1024x768, the multiplier will be 1.6 and so on...

Change Motion, Type and Speed

Change Motion and Speed of a Sprite

You can change the Type, Motion Links and Speed of the Sprite.

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- 3. In the **Type** Group:
 - **Static**: Click to make **a static sprite**. The sprite may be animated but to not move on screen.
 - Straight Line: Click here to define a straight-line motion path. The sprite moves at a constant speed through the screen. The speed and directions are defined by the horizontal and vertical speed values (see below).
 - Bouncing on the bottom of the screen: Click here to define a sprite that bounces at the bottom of the screen, like a ball bouncing on the floor. The height of the bounce is defined by the initial Y position of the sprite (0=top of the screen, 480=bottom of the screen).

4. In the Motion Links Group:

- **Pass over and over**: Click here if you want the sprite to cross the screen without bouncing on its borders. For example, if the sprite disappears on the right border of the screen, it appears again on the left border and so on.
- **Pass randomly**: Click here if you want the sprite to pass randomly on the screen. It works like the previous option, but if the sprite disappears on one side, it do not appears immediately on the other side. It waits for a random period.
- Bouncing on the edges of the screen: Click here if you want the sprite to bounce on the screen borders, like a ball on a pool table. It is usually used with the "straight-line motion path" option. However, it can be combined with the "bounce at the bottom of the screen" option.

5. In the Speed Group:

- **Horizontal**: Enter here the initial horizontal speed of the sprite (-500 to +500). Positive speed means from left to right, negative speed means from right to left.
- Vertical: Enter here the initial vertical speed of the sprite (-500 to +500). Positive speed means from top to bottom, negative speed means from bottom to top.

Randomly change the sprite motion path

You can randomly modify the sprite motion path parameters. The application randomly changes the Type, Links and Speed parameters.

1. Activate the Screen Saver document window.

2. Choose Project/Randomly Change Sprite Motion Path.

Add sprite collision effects

Add Collision effects to Sprites

Two sprites must have the same level to collide.

- **1.** Select the sprite.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- 3. Click on the Sounds and Collisions tab.
- 4. In the area Object Collision level, specify the Collision level of this sprite.
- 5. Click to specify if the path of the sprite must change after a collision with another sprite occurs.
 - If you choose **Change path**, the object's path changes after a collision. This case respects the physics rules.
 - If you choose **Keep path**, the object keep the same path after the collision. This case doesn't respect the physics rules and may accelerate small objects after a few moments of animation.

NOTE: Two sprites must have the same level to collide. Choose level 0 if you don't want this sprite to collide with other sprites. The collision is elastic. It means that it preserves kinetic energy, which is based on speed and mass of each sprite. It acts like 2 balls colliding on a pool table. In our model, the "mass" of a sprite is proportional to its size.

Add sprite collision sounds

Add Collision sounds to Sprites

1. Select the sprite.

2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.

3. In the Collision Sounds group:

- In the Between Object area, enter here the full path to a WAV sound file that will be played each time the sprite collide with another sprite.
- In the Screen (Left + Right) area, enter here the full path to a WAV sound file that will be played each time the sprite collide with the left or right borders of the screen.
- In the Screen (Top + Bottom) area, Enter here the full path to a WAV sound file that will be played each time the sprite collide with the top or bottom borders of the screen.

NOTES: Only WAV sound files are supported for collision sounds. To be more realistic, we recommend you to use short sound files. Use bass tones for big sprites and high-pitched sounds for small sprites.

When 2 sprites with different sounds collide, the sound of the biggest sprite is played.

Randomize position and speed at runtime

When you add a sprite its position and speed (if any) are fixed and will be kept at runtime. It could be useful to randomize these values at runtime. As a result, sprite initial position, speed and direction will be different each time the screensaver starts.

Randomize the initial position of the sprite

- 1. Select the sprite in the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- 3. Click on the Size and Position tab.
- 4. In the **Absolute Position** group, click to choose the **Random Position** option. The two above values will be ignored at runtime and the sprite will be displayed anywhere on screen at each runtime.

Randomize the speed and direction of the sprite

- 1. Select the sprite in the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right Click and choose Properties.
- **3.** Click on the **Motion** tab.
- 4. In the Speed group, click to choose the Randomize Speed option.
- **5.** In the **Horz** and **Vert** fields, enter the random ranges. The initial random speed is calculated by a random number, between 0 and the value you specify (0-500), being added to or subtracted from the Initial Speed for horizontal and vertical respectively

REMARKS:

A value smaller than the **Initial Horizontal Speed** will give the sprite a random speed but maintain the direction. Example: Initial=100, Random=80. This will give you a random speed from 20 to 180, always moving from left to right.

A value larger than the **Initial Horizontal Speed** will give the sprite a random speed and direction. Example: Initial=0, Random=100. This will give you a random speed from -100 to +100. Positive values move the sprite from left to right and negative values move the sprite right to left.

A value of 'zero' will add no random value to the **Initial Horizontal Speed** and therefore have no effect, effectively turning the feature off.

A value smaller than the **Initial Vertical Speed** will give the sprite a random speed but maintain the direction. Example: Initial=100, Random=80. This will give you a random speed from 20 to 180, always moving from top to bottom.

A value larger than the **Initial Vertical Speed** will give the sprite a random speed and direction. Example: Initial=0, Random=100. This will give you a random speed from -100 to +100. Positive values move the sprite from top to bottom and negative values move the sprite bottom to top.

A value of 'zero' will add no random value to the **Initial Vertical Speed** and therefore have no effect, effectively turning the feature off.

Create a transparent sprite

The transparency of a sprite is especially useful when you move or copy an object. For this operation, pure colors are normally used.

- 1. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right Click and choose Properties.
- 2. Click on the Transparency tab.
- **3.** If the box "**Using a transparent color**" is checked, the specified transparent color and tolerance will be used to create a transparent area in the sprite. If the box is not checked, the sprite is opaque.
- 4. In the **Transparent Color** group:
 - In the Red area, enter the red component of the 'transparent' color. Values from 0 to 255 can be specified. The "Using a transparent color" box must be checked to access this value.
 - In the Green area, enter the green component of the 'transparent' color. Values from 0 to 255 can be specified. The "Using a transparent color" box must be checked to access this value.
 - In the Blue area, enter the blue component of the 'transparent' color. Values from 0 to 255 can be specified. The "Using a transparent color" box must be checked to access this value.
 - In the Tolerance area, specify the tolerance of the 'transparent' color. The color tolerance setting determines how close the color of a pixel must be considered as the 'transparent' color. Values from 0 to 100 percent can be specified (20% is generally a good value). The "Using a transparent color" box must be checked to access this value.
 - In the Overall opacity area, specify the global object opacity.

Create Transparent sprite using directly click in the sprite preview

- 1. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right Click and choose Properties.
- 2. Click on the Transparency tab.
- **3.** Click in the sprite preview. This area permits you to specify a transparent color by clicking directly on the picture preview. The **"Using a transparent color"** box must be checked if you want to click in this area.

Create Transparent Sprite using drag and drop

- 1. Select a sprite in the librarian.
- 2. Drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.

NOTE: When you add sprites by using drag and drop from the librarian, the application automatically sets the sprite background to transparent. The upper left pixel color is used to determine the transparent color except the JPEG, JPG files (the background is opaque).

Specify sprite type

You can specify the type of the image in the sprite: Illustration or Photo.

1. Select the sprite.

- 2. Choose Project/Sprite Properties or Right click and choose Properties.
- **3.** Click on the Image tab. You can read in this box, the filename and its location, its specifications (Image format, Size, colors).
- **4.** In the Type of Image group:
 - If you specify this image as an **Illustration** (generally objects with transparency) it will automatically be compressed and converted using the PNG format during compilation. This compression is lower than JPEG but do not alter the image and preserve transparency.
 - If you specify this image as a **Photo** (generally pictures without transparency) it will automatically be compressed and converted using the JPEG format during compilation. This compression is higher than PNG but may alter the image and not preserve transparency.

Save sprite image in a project

The sprite image will be able to be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the image file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.

- **1.** If you **checked** the **"Save a copy of this image in the Document"** option, the image file will be included into the screen saver file when saved.
- 2. If you uncheck this option, the image file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SPP document.

Duplicate sprites in a project

Duplicate a sprite

- 1. Activate the Stop Animation button in the toolbar.
- 2. Select the Sprite.
- 3. Choose Edit/Copy and Edit/Paste.

or

- 1. Activate the Stop Animation button in the toolbar.
- 2. Select the sprite and press CTRL (keep pressed) then use Drag and Drop to move it in the screen saver area.

Import/Export sprites from the project

Sprites are complex objects composed of several items (image, sounds, properties...). You can already copy/paste sprite objects from one project to another.

Another useful feature is the ability to export a sprite object in a file (SSS extension) to permanently store it in the librarian for example. Later, you'll be able to import it back in another project. All its properties (position, size, speed, motion, collision effects...) will be kept.

Export/Save a sprite in a file

- 1. Select the sprite you wish to export in the list.
- 2. Right-click on it and select Save Sprite As command in the menu.
- 3. A standard Windows dialog box opens. Save the sprite as a SSS file at the desired location.

Import/Add a sprite from a SSS file

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/New Sprites or right-click and choose New sprites.
- **3.** Browse your disks and select the SSS files you wish to add. Click **Open.** The new sprites are added.

Export an image from a sprite object

A sprite is mainly composed of an image. It may be interesting to export this image to a file. Unlike SSS files, the image does not include the sprite properties (position, size...). Only the image is saved as BMP, JPEG or PNG.

- 1. Select the sprite you wish to save as image in the list.
- 2. Right-click on it and select Save Sprite As Image command in the menu.
- 3. A standard Windows dialog box opens. Save the sprite as an Image file at the desired location.

Customize the screen saver background

A new project is created with a default gradient background. You can easily change this default background. Several options are available.

Customize the screensaver background

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window Document.
- 2. Choose Project/Project Properties or Click in the Screen Saver Background and choose Properties.
- 3. Click on the **Background** tab.
- 4. If You check the Image Wallpaper button:

In the **Pathname** area, specify the **full pathname** of the bitmap file to use for the background. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box.

Specify the way you want the background image to be displayed:

- **Stretch**: Means that the image will be stretched to fit the entire screen. The image may be distorted when stretched.
- Center: Means that the image will be displayed centered on screen at scale 1:1. If the image is smaller than the screen, the visible background is black.

CORPORATE EDITION

• Tile: Means that the image will be repeated at scale 1:1 to make a tiled background.

5. If you check the Gradient button:

- In the **From color** area, specify the first color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the left border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the top of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
- In the **To Color** area, specify the second color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the right border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the bottom of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
- Specify a Vertical gradient.
- Specify a Horizontal gradient.
- Specify a **Mirror gradient**. It means that the second color is placed at the center of the screen and the first color is placed on screen borders.

6. If you check the Solid Color button:

- In the Color area, specify the chosen solid color. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
- Check the **Keep Screen Background** button to specify that you want to keep the screen background as it was just before the screen saver starts.
- **7.** Check the **Keep Screen Background** button to specify the background darker (25%, 50% or 75%). Click here to specify that you want to keep the screen background as it was just before the screen saver starts.

Set a background wallpaper using Drag & Drop

- 1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files, select the Images then Backgrounds folders.
- **2.** If you want a Stretched background Wallpaper, select a background, press SHIFT (keep pressed) then drag /drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- **3.** If you want a Tiled background Wallpaper, select a background, press SHIFT+CTRL (keep pressed) then drag /drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- 4. If you want a **Center background Wallpaper**, **double click** on the Screen Saver Document window. The dialog box **Project Properties** opens. In the **Image Wallpaper Group**, choose the option **Center**.

Add a background music

Add a background music

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.
- 2. Choose Project/Background Music or Right click and choose Background Music.
- **3.** The **"Background Music"** window opens. In the **Music Pathname** area, specify the full pathname of the file to use for the background music. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box. Many of these files are available for download on Internet (check copyright before redistributing). Several file format are supported:
 - **MID (Midi Sequence)**: This is the most recommended file format for background music (small file size and the ability to be played with collision sounds simultaneously).

- **MP3 (Layer III Mpeg)**: This is a CD-quality music playback. CD songs can be compressed using this method. The drawback of this file format is the size (approx 1Mb per minute). Cannot be played with sound collisions.
- MOD/S3M/XM (Music Modules): Excellent quality but this is a musical sequence. CD songs cannot be compressed using this format. The file size is small/medium (generally < 500Kb). Cannot be played with sound collisions.
- WAV (Windows Wave): Excellent quality but very large file size. Not recommended
- **4.** If the **Save a copy of the Music file in the Project document** option is checked, the music file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you **check** this option, the music file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the music file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you **uncheck** this option, the music file **will NOT be included** into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the music file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.
- **5.** If you want to play again the music when finished, check **"Restart music playback when finished"**.

Add a background music using Drag & Drop

- 1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Music folder.
- 2. Select a music file then drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- 3. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Music Pathname" in the Dialog box "Background Music". Click YES.

Add a background music using the Edit/Copy/Paste function

- **1.** Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Music folder or select a Music file from the built-in Explorer.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- 3. Return to the project window.
- 3. Choose Edit/Paste.
- 5. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Music pathname" in the Dialog box "Background Music properties". Click OK.

Add a movie or animation

Add a movie or animation

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.
- 2. Choose Project/Video Clip or Right click and choose Video Clip.
- **3.** The **Video Clip window** opens. In the **Video Clip Pathname** area, specify the full pathname of the file to use for the screen saver video clip. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a

standard Windows® dialog box. Many of these files are available for download on Internet (check copyright before redistributing). Several file format are supported:

- **AVI (Microsoft Video)**: This is the most recommended file format for video file (medium file size but compatible with all Windows® versions).
- **MPG (Mpeg I)**: Another recommended file format (very small file size). The drawback is that the user must have Windows 98 (or Windows 95 with Active Movie installed).
- **MOV/QT (Apple QuickTime®)**: Medium file size, very good quality. The drawback is that the use must have installed QuickTime for Windows (version 4 or more).
- **RAM/RM (Real Media)**: Small file size, average quality. The drawback is that the user must have installed RealPlayer (version 6 or more).
- SWF (Shockwave/Flash): It's a multimedia animation file format. Very small file size, very good vector quality. This format lets you create powerfull animation. The drawback is that the user must have installed the Shockwave Flash Runtime Player (provided with Windows Millenium Edition).
- FLI/FLC (Autodesk Animation): It's an animation file format. Average file size. Very good bitmap quality. This format is generally used to produce 3D animations. No additional component is needed to play this format.
- **4.** If the **Save a copy of the Video clip file in the Project Document** option is checked, the video file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you check this option, the video file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the video file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you **uncheck** this option, the video file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the video file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

5. In the **Position** (center) group:

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.
- In the Y area, Enter here the Y coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.

NOTE: The visible screen coordinates are always specified from (0,0: top-left) to (640,480: bottom-right). Of course if you launch your screen saver on a 1024x768 display for example, the coordinates will be recalculated accordingly.

6. In the Size group:

- If you check **Full screen (maximized)** option, it allows to display full screen the video.
- In the **Width** area, enter here the width of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- In the **Height** area, enter here the height of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- If you check **Based on screen size** option, the video size is based on the screen size in percent.
- 7. If you check **Play the Video clip Forever (screen saver playing in background)** option, it allows to specify a video clip that will be played over and over. The screen saver (other sprites for example) will play in background. The video clip window is opaque and is always displayed in foreground.
8. If you check **Play the Video clip once before the screen saver starts** option, it allows to specify a video clip that will be played once before the screen saver starts. When the video clip is finished, it disappears and the screen saver starts. It can be used as an animated splash screen.

Add a video clip or animation using Drag & Drop

1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Animation folder.

- 2. Select a music file then drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- 3. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Video Clip Pathname" in the Dialog box "Video clip properties". Click YES.

When you add a FLI-FLC Animation to Project using drag and drop, you can choose to add it as a sprite or as an independant window.(like clips videos).

- If you choose the "**Convert the Animation into Sprite**" the animation will be converted into a sprite with transparency. This is not recommended for larges files.
- If you choose the "Add animation as an independant window", the animation will be embedded in the screen saver as an independant window. The animation can be played once before the screen saver starts or forever with sprites playing in background.

Add a default music using the Edit/Copy/Paste function

- 1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Animation folder or select a Music file from the built-in Exploreur.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- 3. Return to the project window.
- 4. Choose Edit/Paste.
- 5. The name of the Video clip file displays in the area "Video pathname" in the Dialog box "Video clip properties". Click OK.

Save the project (SSP file)

To create a screen saver, you must first create a Project (.SSP file). Only SSP files can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window.

Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to <u>compile</u> this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

Save the Project to a SSP file

- 1. Choose File Save or File Save As.
- 2. Choose the directory and enter the new project name (add SSP extension).

or

- 1. Select the folder in the librarian.
- 2. Select the active project window.
- 3. Click on the Add to the Librarian button in the local toolbar.

4. The dialog box **Add a project to the librarian** opens. Specify the new project name. The default extension is SSP.

Test the screen saver full screen

You can test the Screen Saver Project using full screen resolution.

1. Choose Project/Test Full screen or F11.

Compile a screen saver file

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the SCR file can't be modified or decompiled. Don't loose your SSP file!

To learn how to create a SCR screensaver from your project, read this topic (later in this chapter): **Compile a screen saver file (SCR)**

Compile an installable package

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers. You can choose to create an installation package (strongly recommended).

During this compilation process, the project will first be compiled as a SCR file. Then, this file will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package.

<u>REMARK</u>: Using this compilation method you can create demo/limited versions of your screensavers.

Create an installable screen saver package

To learn how to create a install package from your project, read this topic: <u>Compile an installable</u> screen saver file (EXE)

Install a screensaver on a computer using an install package

When a screensaver is compiled as an install package, the installation is very simple for the end user.

- 1. Launch the install package. A dialog box opens.
- 2. Follow the installation wizard. Accept the license agreement if any.
- 3. The screensavers is installed (as default if asked by the user).

Create a Slide Show Based Screen Saver

Create a Slide Show Based Screen Saver Project

A slideshow is a sequence of full screen images, each one loading the next. Each image is called a "slide". Each slide is displayed on screen for a specified period of time. When this period is over, the next slide is displayed using a possible transition effect (cut, roll, fade...). A background music can be added as well as a startup video sequence. This kind of screensaver is great to display your vacation photos or promote a company slogan for example.

Create slide show based screen saver project

To create a screen saver, you must create a Project first (.SSP file). Only this file can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window. Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

- Choose File/New Screen Saver Project. A dialog box opens. You can choose the type of screen saver to create: "Slide Show based Screen Saver" The screen saver is made on several photos displaying on screen file like a slide show. Several options: music, transition effects.
- Click on the Next Button. The "Create a New Screen Saver Project" dialog box opens. You can specify Screen saver and Author information in the areas: Title, Description, Name and Copyright.
- 3. Click on the Next button. The application creates a new project window (see below):

| The Edit Project Scharter Ferretes | Ann Vinden Hep } === 🕲 [| 8 2 |
|---|---|-----|
| Storaen X 1 *** 2 Anti-Articuted Storaes Service 4 Anti-Articuted Storaes Service 5 Detect Service 6 Detect Service 7 Detect Service 8 Detect Service 9 Detect Service 9 Detect Service | Image: 10 Image: 10 | |
| And Share And Share Challes I and And Share Challes I and And Share I and I and And Share I and I and I and A | 4 | |

U Librarian window, folder tree - Here you can browse your personal Librarian to access your working files.

CORPORATE EDITION

- 2 Librarian window, File list The files which are present in the selected Librarian folder are present here. You can open a file by double-clicking on it or you can add it to your project (or s) using drag and drop.
- Project properties You can change/edit the project properties here. Five dialogs are available here: "General", "Slide Properties", "Background", "Music" and "Video Clip".
- Slide list Here is displayed the list of slides (images) included in the screensaver. To change slide properties, select one of more slides here and select the "Slide Properties" in 3. The changes made in 3 affect all the selected slides in the list.
- S Preview window You see here a small preview of the display. It changes with the slide selection in 4.

Adjust general properties

Adjust general properties

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.
- 2. Choose Project/Project Properties or click on the General Tab
- 3. In the Title area, specify the name of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **4.** In the **Author** area, specify the author of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 5. In the **Copyright** area, specify the copyright of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 6. In the **Description** area, specify a description of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 7. In the **Options** group, choose one of the options:
 - If you check the '**Repeat Forever**' box, the screen saver will automatically restart from the beginning when it reaches the end.
 - If you check the "**Display slide Information**" box, the screen saver will display the name and description for each slide.
 - If you check the "**Draw a shadow behind the picture**", the screen saver will display a shadow for each slide. It's recommended if you use a textured background.
 - In the area Margin, enter a value in pixels. It's recommended if you display full screen slides.

Add new slides in the project

A slide is an image. To add slides in the project you just have to add images that you selected from your disks.

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Insert New Slides or select Slide Properties tab and click the Add Slides button.

| ieneral Side Proper | ies Backgroun | Default Music | Video Clip | | |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| | 0 | | | | |
| | | No slide present i Click below to | in the screen save add new sides. | 0 | |
| | | (Baa b | | | |
| | | | | | |

3. Browse your disks and select the image files you wish to add. Click **Open.** The new slides are added.

Add new slides using Drag and Drop from the Librarian

- 1. Open the Screen Saver Document window.
- **2.** Select one or more images in the **Librarian** then **drag and drop** them to the Screen Saver Document window.

HINT: Press CTRL (keep pressed) while you click on the 2 files to select them.



Add new sprites from the Explorer

- 1. Open a new Explorer window (Ctrl+E) or choose File/New/New Explorer.
- 2. Browse your disks and select the images you want to add as sprites.
- 3. Select Edit/Copy (Ctrl+C).



- 4. Open or select the Screen Saver Document window.
- 5. Select Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V). The new sprites are added.

Arrange the slide sequence

You can arrange the order of your slides.

Bring the slide to the beginning of the slide show

1. Select a slide

2. Choose Project/Bring to the Beginning or Right click and choose Bring to the Beginning.

This option brings the selected slide to the beginning of the slide show

Send the slide to the end of the slide show

- 1. Select the slide.
- 2. Choose Project/Send to the End or Right Click and choose Send to the End.

The option sends the selected file to the end of the slide show.

Move slides in the slide show

1. Select one or more slides then use drag and drop to move them to the new location.

or

1. Select one or more slides then choose Edit/Cut and Edit/Paste

Duplicate slides in the slide show

1. Select one or more slides, press **CTRL** then **use drag and drop to copy** them to the new location.

or

1. Select one or more slides then choose Edit/Copy and Edit/Paste

Change slide image pathname

1. Select the Slide Properties tab.

- 2. In the Slide image pathname area, specify the new location and name of the slide.
- **3.** If you **checked** the **"Save a copy of the file in the project document"** option, the slide file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the slide file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- 4. If you unchecked this option, the slide file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

Display/change slide information

1. Select the slide in the slide list area.

2. In the area **Name** and **Description**, you can change the Name and Description of the selected slide. By default the filename is added here but you can change it.

NOTE: This title will be displayed at the bottom of the screen if you choose Display Slide Information in general tab.

Save a slide in a project

The slide file will be included into the screen saver project file when saved. This option is useful because the slide file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.

- 1. If you checked the "Save a copy of the file in the project document" option, the slide file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the slide file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- 2. If you unchecked this option, the slide file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

Change the slide size

1. Select one or more slides in the slide list area.

- 2. Choose in the group Size, you can choose:
 - Scale 1:1: It means that image will be initially displayed centered on screen using its original dimension (scale 1:1).
 - Maximized: It means that image will be displayed maximized on screen.

<u>REMARK</u>: If you specified a Margin in general tab, the image will not touch the border of the screen.

Customize transition effect

You can choose from a large selection of transition effects: Random transition, Wipe left, Wipe Right, cut...

- 1. Select one or more slides
- 2. Choose in the Transition Effect Drop Down list, the transition associated with a slide.

<u>TIP</u>: Choose **Display Slide Full Screen** to see the transition effect when chosen.

Customize slide display duration

You have two options regarding how long your slide remains on the screen.

1. In the **Duration** group, you can choose:

- Fixed Duration: It allows to specify how many seconds to wait before diplaying the next slide.
- Based on associated sound: If you choose this option, the slide will be paused waiting for the associated sound to end. You must specify an associated sound to use this option in the area below.

Add a slide specific sound

You can associate a specific sound to each slide. The sound will start playing once the screen saver fully appears on the screen.

1. Select a slide.

- 2. Choose in the "Associated sound" group one option:
 - Default: the screen saver plays a default music (which has been specified in the "Default Music" Tab)
 - Mute: the screen saver is not associated to music.
 - **Specific**: It allows to specify in this area the location and name of the sound associated to slide. The slide will be paused waiting for the associated sound to end

- **3.** If you check **"Save a copy in a project"**, the sound file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the sound file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- **4.** If you **unchecked** this option, the sound file **will NOT** be included into the screen saver file **when saved**. The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.
- 5. If you check the "**Repeat**" box, the screen saver will automatically play slide specific sound when it reaches the end.

Display the slide full screen

You can display the document/item using full screen resolution associated with its transition effect.

- 1. Select the slide.
- 2. Choose Project/Display Slide full screen or press Enter.

Customize the screen saver background

Customize the screen saver background

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Choose Project/Background Properties or Click on the Background tab.
- 3. If You check the Image Wallpaper button:

In the **Pathname** area, specify the **full pathname** of the bitmap file to use for the background. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box.

Specify the way you want the background image to be displayed:

- **Stretch**: Means that the image will be stretched to fit the entire screen. The image may be distorted when stretched.
- **Center**: Means that the image will be displayed centered on screen at scale 1:1. If the image is smaller than the screen, the visible background is black.
- Tile: Means that the image will be repeated at scale 1:1 to make a tiled background.
- **4.** If you check the **Gradient** button:
 - In the **From color** area, specify the first color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the left border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the top of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
 - In the **To Color** area, specify the second color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the right border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the bottom of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
 - Specify a Vertical gradient.
 - Specify a Horizontal gradient.
 - Specify a **Mirror gradient**. It means that the second color is placed at the center of the screen and the first color is placed on screen borders.

5. If you check the Solid Color button:

 In the Color area, specify the chosen solid color. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.

Add a default background music

Add a default music to the screen saver

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver project window.
- 2. Choose Project/Default Music or Right click and choose Default Music.
- **3.** The **"Default Music"** window opens. In the **Music Pathname** area, specify the full pathname of the file to use for the background music. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box. Many of these files are available for download on Internet (check copyright before redistributing). Several file format are supported:
 - MID (Midi Sequence): This is the most recommended file format for background music (small file size and the ability to be played with collision sounds simultaneously).
 - MP3 (Layer III Mpeg): This is a CD-quality music playback. CD songs can be compressed using this method. The drawback of this file format is the size (approx 1Mb per minute). Cannot be played with sound collisions.
 - MOD/S3M/XM (Music Modules): Excellent quality but this is a musical sequence. CD songs cannot be compressed using this format. The file size is small/medium (generally < 500Kb). Cannot be played with sound collisions.
 - WAV (Windows Wave): Excellent quality but very large file size. Not recommended
- **4.** If the **Save a copy of the Music file in the Project document** option is checked, the music file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you check this option, the music file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the music file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you **un-check** this option, the music file **will NOT be included** into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the music file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.
- **5.** If you want to play again the music when finished, check "**Restart music playback when finished**".

NOTE: The music will be automatically placed in background if you choose "Default" associated sound in slide properties.

Add a default music using Drag & Drop

- 1. Go to the librarian, expand Media Files and select the Music folder.
- 2. Select a music file then drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- 3. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Music Pathname" in the Dialog box "Default Music properties". Click OK.

Add a default music using the Edit/Copy/Paste function

- **1.** Go to the **librarian**, Expand **Media Files** and select the **Music** folder or select a Music file from the built-in Exploreur.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- **3.** Return to the project window.
- 3. Choose Edit/Paste.
- 5. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Music Pathname" in the Dialog box "Default Music properties". Click OK.

Add a movie or animation

Add a movie or animation at the beginning of the screen saver

1. Activate the Screen Saver window.

- 2. Choose Project/Video Clip or Right click and choose Video Clip.
- **3.** The **Video Clip window** opens. In the **Video Clip Pathname** area, specify the full pathname of the file to use for the screen saver video clip. You can also click **Browse** to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box. Many of these files are available for download on Internet (check copyright before redistributing). Several file format are supported:
 - AVI/ASF/WMF (Microsoft Video): This is the most recommended file format for video file (medium file size but compatible with all Windows® versions).
 - MPG/MPEG (Mpeg I): Another recommended file format (very small file size). The drawback is that the user must have Windows 98 (or Windows 95 with Active Movie installed).
 - **MOV/QT (Apple QuickTime®)**: Medium file size, very good quality. The drawback is that the use must have installed QuickTime for Windows (version 4 or more).
 - **RAM/RM/RT (Real Media)**: Small file size, average quality. The drawback is that the user must have installed RealPlayer (version 6 or more).
 - SWF (Shockwave Flash): It's a multimedia animation file format. Very small file size, very good vector quality. This format lets you create powerfull animation. The drawback is that the user must have installed the Shockwave Flash Runtime Player (provided with Windows Millenium Edition).
 - FLI/FLC (Autodesk Animation): It's an animation file format. Average file size. Very good bitmap quality. This format is generally used to produce 3D animations. No additional component is needed to play this format.
- **4.** If the **Save a copy of the file in the Project Document** option is checked, the video file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you **check** this option, the video file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the video file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you un-check this option, the video file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the video file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

5. In the Position (center) group:

CORPORATE EDITION

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.
- In the Y area, Enter here the Y coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.

NOTE: The visible screen coordinates are always specified from (0,0: top-left) to (640,480: bottom-right). Of course if you launch your screen saver on a 1024x768 display for example, the coordinates will be recalculated accordingly.

6. In the Size group:

- If you check **Full screen (maximized)** option, it allows to display full screen the video.
- If you check Specific size, you can enter video Width and Height:

In the **Width** area, enter here the width of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.

In the **Height** area, enter here the height of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.

- If you check **Based on screen size** option, the video size is based on the screen size in percent.
- 7. If you check **Play the Video clip Forever (screen saver playing in background)** option, it allows to specify a video clip that will be played over and over. The video clip window is opaque and is always displayed in foreground.
- **8.** If you check **Play the Video clip once before the screen saver starts** option, it allows to specify a video clip that will be played once before the screen saver starts. When the video clip is finished, it disappears and the screen saver starts. It can be used as an animated splash screen.

Add a video clip or animation using Drag & Drop

- 1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Animation folder.
- 2. Select a video/animation file then drag and drop to the Screen Saver Document window.
- 3. The name of the Music file displays in the area "Video Clip Pathname" in the Dialog box "Video clip properties". Click YES.

When you add a FLI-FLC Animation to Project using drag and drop, you can choose to add it as a sprite or as an independent window.(like clips videos).

- If you choose the "**Convert the Animation into Sprite**" the animation will be converted into a sprite with transparency. This is not recommended for larges files.
- If you choose the "Add animation as an independent window", the animation will be embedded in the screen saver as an independent window. The animation can be played once before the screen saver starts or forever with sprites playing in background.

Add a video clip or animation using the Edit/Copy/Paste function

- 1. Go to the librarian, Expand Media Files and select the Animation folder or select a Music file from the built-in Explorer.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- 3. Return to the project window.
- 4. Choose Edit/Paste.

5. The name of the Video clip file displays in the area "Video pathname" in the Dialog box "Video clip properties". Click OK.

Save the project (SSP file)

To create a screen saver, you must before create a Project (.SSP file).

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window.

Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

Save the Project to a SSP file

- 1. Choose File Save or File Save As.
- 2. Choose the directory and enter the new project name .SSP.

or

- 1. Select the folder in the librarian.
- 2. Select the active project window.
- 3. Click on the Add to the Librarian button in the local toolbar.
- **4.** The dialog box **Add a project to the librarian** opens. Specify the new project name. The default extension is SSP.

Test the screen saver full screen

You can test the Screen Saver Project using full screen resolution.

1. Choose Project/Test Full screen or F11.

Compile a screen saver file

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the SCR file can't be modified or decompiled. Don't loose your SSP file!

To learn how to create a SCR screensaver from your project, read this topic (later in this chapter): **Compile a screen saver file (SCR)**

Compile an installable package

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers. You can choose to create an installation package (strongly recommended).

During this compilation process, the project will first be compiled as a SCR file. Then, this file will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package.

<u>REMARK</u>: Using this compilation method you can create demo/limited versions of your screensavers.

Create an installable screen saver package

To learn how to create a install package from your project, read this topic: **Compile an installable** screen saver file (EXE)

Install a screensaver on a computer using an install package

When a screensaver is compiled as an install package, the installation is very simple for the end user.

- 1. Launch the install package. A dialog box opens.
- 2. Follow the installation wizard. Accept the license agreement if any.
- 3. The screensavers is installed (as default if asked by the user).

Create a Flash® Based Screen Saver

Create a Flash® Based Screen Saver

<u>Macromedia Flash®</u> is a powerful product which permits to create sophisticated vector animations for the Web. SWF (Flash®) is the file format used by Macromedia Flash® to deliver graphics, animation and sound over the Internet.

What are vector graphics? Vector graphics, which manipulate coordinates and mathematical formulas rather than pixel-by-pixel images, produce graphics files that are one-tenth the size of bitmaps. Additionally, SWF can deliver animation, rich colors, sound, and interaction. To view a Flash animation, the user must download and install the Flash® player. This is automatically done when he visits a website using Flash®. As a result, over 95% of Internet users can now view SWF content: millions of people have downloaded the Flash® player for their browser. Flash® is a great format to create gorgeous screensavers.

Create slide show based screen saver project

To create a screen saver, you must create a Project first (.SSP file). Only this file can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window. Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

- 1. Choose File/New Screen Saver Project. A dialog box opens. You can choose the type of screen saver to create: "Flash based Screen Saver".
- Click on the Next Button. The "Create a New Screen Saver Project" dialog box opens. You can specify Screen saver and Author information in the areas: Title, Description, Name and Copyright.
- 3. Click on the Next button. The application creates a new project window (see below):



CORPORATE EDITION

- 4. In the **Application window** (**1**) you see the **menu** and the **main toolbar**. This toolbar can be customized by double-clicking or right-clicking on it. When you select a command in this menu or main toolbar, it acts on the selected item or window.
- 5. In the Librarian (2) you can select the folder that contains the media files (images, animations, music, sounds) that you'll use in your project (3).
- 6. The **Project document window** is placed in the working area (④). The application is multidocument enabled. It means that you can create or open several documents in the working area of the application. A local toolbar is located in the document window. If you click on a button in this toolbar (④), it acts on the selected item in the document window. This toolbar cannot be customized.
- The Document window is divided in two parts. In the left side (5) are located the edit dialog boxes that you'll use to set project and Flash movie properties. It is composed of 3 windows that you can activate by clicking on the associated tabs: General, Background and Flash Movie. On the right side (6), a preview window is available.

Adjust general properties

Adjust general properties

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.
- 2. Choose Project/Project Properties or click on the General Tab
- 3. In the Title area, specify the name of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **4.** In the **Author** area, specify the author of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 5. In the **Copyright** area, specify the copyright of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **6.** In the **Description** area, specify a description of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.

Specify the Flash® movie

A Flash screensaver can play only one movie. You just have to specify it in the project. Several methods are available though.

Specify the movie from the project window

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. In the Flash Movie dialog box (click the tab if necessary), click on the [...] button (**1**). A standard Windows dialog box opens to let you choose the Flash movie file you want to use. Browse your disks, select a file and click Open.



- 3. The full pathname is added in the Flash Movie field (2) and you see the movie in the **Preview** window (3).
- **4.** If the **Save a copy of the file in the Project Document** option is checked, the video file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you check this option, the animation file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the animation file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you **uncheck** this option, the animation file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the video file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

5. In the Position (center) group:

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the animation windows on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the animation window.
- In the Y area, Enter here the Y coordinate of position of the animation windows on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the animation window.

NOTE: The visible screen coordinates are always specified from (0,0: top-left) to (640,480: bottom-right). Of course if you launch your screen saver on a 1024x768 display for example, the coordinates will be recalculated accordingly.

6. In the Size group:

- If you check **Full screen (maximized)** option, it allows to display full screen the video.
- In the **Width** area, enter here the width of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- In the **Height** area, enter here the height of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- If you check **Based on screen size** option, the video size is based on the screen size in percent.
- 7. If you check **Automatically Repeat Forever** option, it allows to specify an animation that will be played over and over.

8. If you check Show Mouse Pointer option, it allows to let the user interact with the animation..

Add a Flash file using Drag & Drop

1. Go to the librarian, expand Media Files and select the Animation folder.

2. Select a flash file then drag and drop (3) to the Screen Saver document window:

| Variation X Productions A Constructions A Construction | Intorial3 Intorial3 Interial Independ (Place Process) Interior | . a . |
|--|--|-------|
| Sound | Barrows Data Cover 10 In Concolor Toronz Marcel Sold Color Color | |

3. A dialog box opens (see below).

| Elash Movie: | | / | (77 Kb) | |
|--|---|--|--------------|--------|
| cuments VAxi | ialis Librarian\Media Files\V | lash\Tutorial-Pssp | Black.swf | |
| 🕥 🕡 Using th | e Shockwave/Flash format ma the Macromedia@Flash Plays | ly force the end user Ir. See Help. | | Play |
| Save a co | opy of the file in the projec | t document | | |
| Size | | | Position (co | enter) |
| Ful S Speci | creen (maximized) fic Size: | | 8: 320 | 1 |
| Width | . 106 🕼 🕾 Height [| 100 👙 🛬 | <u>Y</u> 240 | 4.8 |
| Show Ma | use Pointer (let the user in | teract with the an | imation) | |

- **4.** In **Flash Movie** field (**1**) you see the full pathname to the file you're about to add. Check that this is the correct file.
- 5. In the Size group, select the Full Screen (maximized) option (2). Also, be sure the option Show Mouse Pointer (3) is NOT checked. This is used to create interactive screensavers (not for this tutorial). When done, Click OK.
- 6. The file is included in the project (you see the filename in the Flash Movie field) and you see the movie in the **Preview** window (on right side).

Specify the Flash® movie using the Clipboard (copy/paste)

- 1. Go to the librarian or the built-in Explorer (Ctrl+E), browse folders and select a Flash file.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- 3. Return to the project window.
- 4. Choose Edit/Paste.
- 5. The name of the Flash file displays in the area "Flash movie" in the Dialog box "Shockwave Flash properties". Click OK.
- 6. The file is included in the project (you see the filename in the Flash Movie field) and you see the movie in the **Preview** window (on right side).

Allow to the user interact with the Flash animation

1. Select the Flash Movie tab.

- 2. if you check the option **Show Mouse Pointer** option, the mouse pointer will be visible and the end user will be able to interact with the Flash animation by clicking on it (if the Flash project has been programmed to receive mouse clicks).
- **3.** If you check **Automatically forever** option, it allows to specify a Flash animation that will be played over and over.

Change the Flash® file pathname

You can change the Flash movie pathname at anytime during your project creation (even if a movie has already been specified).

Change the Flash® file pathname

1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.

2. In the Flash® Movie dialog box (click the tab if necessary), click on the [...] button (1). A standard Windows dialog box opens to let you choose the Flash movie file you want to use. Browse your disks, select a file and click Open.



3. The full pathname is added in the Flash Movie field (2) and you see the movie in the **Preview** window (3).

Save the Flash® file in the project

- 1. Click on the Flash Movie Tab
- 2. If you check the "Save a copy of the file in the project document" option, the file will be included into the screen saver project file (SSP) when saved. This option is useful because the Flash file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- **3.** If you uncheck this option, the file **will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved**. The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

Adjust the Flash® movie display size

1. Click on the Flash Movie tab:

2. In the Size group:

- If you check Full screen (maximized) option, it allows to display full screen the animation.
- In the **Width** area, enter here the width of the animation window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original animation clip width.
- In the **Height** area, enter here the height of the animation window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original animation clip width.
- If you check **Based on screen size** option, the animation size is based on the screen size in percent.

Adjust the Flash® movie position on screen

1. Click on the Shockwave Flash tab.

2. In the **Position (center)** group:

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.
- In the Y area, enter here the Y coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.

Customize the screen saver background

Customize the screen saver background

1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.

2. Choose Project/Background Properties or Click on the Background tab.

3. If you check the Image Wallpaper button:

- In the Pathname area, specify the full pathname of the bitmap file to use for the background. You can also click Browse to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box.
- Specify the way you want the background image to be displayed:

Stretch: Means that the image will be stretched to fit the entire screen. The image may be distorted when stretched.

Center: Means that the image will be displayed centered on screen at scale 1:1. If the image is smaller than the screen, the visible background is black.

Tile: Means that the image will be repeated at scale 1:1 to make a tiled background.

4. If you check the **Gradient** button:

- In the **From color** area, specify the first color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the left border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the top of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
- In the **To Color** area, specify the second color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the right border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the bottom of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
- Specify a Vertical gradient.
- Specify a Horizontal gradient.
- Specify a **Mirror gradient**. It means that the second color is placed at the center of the screen and the first color is placed on screen borders.

5. If you check the Solid Color button:

 In the Color area, specify the chosen solid color. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.

Specific FSCommands for the Screen Saver

Macromedia Flash® can use the FSCommand action to control the playback and appearance of projectors, as well as launch external applications. The FSCommand action takes two parameters: a command and an argument. In some cases, an argument is not required.

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer has implemented 4 new commands to perform specific tasks.

Open an URL from the Flash screensaver

Sometimes it is useful to open an URL (in a separate browser window) when the user performs an action (a click on a button). An action already exists in Flash® to perform this: getURL(). For an unknown

reason, this action (which is executed by Flash) does not work when the screensavers is executing. It may even cause a crash. Do not use this action.

If you want the screensaver to open a web page in a separate window, use the FSCommand "OpenURL". Here is an example of script that opens an URL when the user release the mouse button on a specific area:

```
on (release) {
  fscommand ("OpenUrl", "http://www.axialis.com");
}
```

Close the Flash Screensaver

If you want to close the screensaver using an action, use the FSCommand "CloseScreensaver". DO NOT use the "quit" command. Here is an example of script that closes the screen saver when the user release the mouse button on a specific area:

```
on (release) {
  fscommand ("CloseScreensaver");
}
```

Open a Message Box

To open a dialog box which displays a text message, use the FSCommand "MessageBox". Here is an example of script that opens a message box when the user release the mouse button on a specific area:

```
on (release) {
  fscommand ("MessageBox","This is the message");
}
```

Open the Activation Box

If you created a demo/limited screensaver, it could be useful to open the ActivationBox using the FSCommand "ActivationBox". Here is an example of script that opens the box when the user release the mouse button on a specific area:

```
on (release) {
  fscommand ("ActivationBox");
}
```

Specific Flash® variables for screensavers with activation

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer creates and initialize various variables specific to the screen saver. These variables can be useful in the Flash® scripts to handle the activation status of the screensaver:

| Variables | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| HasActivationCode | "0"> The screensaver has NO activation code "1"> The screensaver has an activation code system |

The variables below exist only if HasActivationCode is "1":

| LimitationType | "0"> Time Limited (N days) "1"> Limited to N sprites/slides |
|----------------|--|
| | |
| Limit | The total number of days or sprite/slides of the limitation. It depends of the LimitationType value |
| | |
| DaysLeft | Number of days left in the trial period (only if LimitationType is "0") |
| | |
| IsActivated | "0"> The screensaver has NOT been activated (demo mode) "1"> The screensaver IS activated (full mode) |
| | |
| HasExpired | "0"> The screensaver has NOT yet expired "1"> The screensaver HAS expired |

Save the project (SSP file)

To create a screen saver, you must before create a Project (.SSP file).

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window.

Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

Save the Project to a SSP file

- 1. Choose File Save or File Save As.
- 2. Choose the directory and enter the new project name .SSP.

or

- 1. Select the folder in the librarian.
- 2. Select the active project window.
- 3. Click on the Add to the Librarian button in the local toolbar.
- **4.** The dialog box **Add a project to the librarian** opens. Specify the new project name. The default extension is SSP.

Test the screen saver full screen

You can test the Screen Saver Project using full screen resolution.

1. Choose Project/Test Full screen or F11.

Compile a screen saver file

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the SCR file can't be modified or decompiled. Don't loose your SSP file!

To learn how to create a SCR screensaver from your project, read this topic (later in this chapter): **Compile a screen saver file (SCR)**

Compile an installable package

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers. You can choose to create an installation package (strongly recommended).

During this compilation process, the project will first be compiled as a SCR file. Then, this file will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package.

<u>REMARK</u>: Using this compilation method you can create demo/limited versions of your screensavers.

Create an installable screen saver package

To learn how to create a install package from your project, read this topic: <u>Compile an installable</u> <u>screen saver file (EXE)</u>

Install a screensaver on a computer using an install package

When a screensaver is compiled as an install package, the installation is very simple for the end user.

- 1. Launch the install package. A dialog box opens.
- 2. Follow the installation wizard. Accept the license agreement if any.
- 3. The screensavers is installed (as default if asked by the user).

Create Video Based Screen Saver

Create a Video Based Screen Saver

A video screensaver permits to display a list of video clips full screen in sequence. This kind of screensaver is less used but could be useful to display a company advertisement clip for example.

Create Video based screen saver project

To create a screen saver, you must create a Project first (.SSP file). Only this file can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window. Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created, can't be modified or decompiled.

- 1. Choose File/New Screen Saver Project. A dialog box opens. You can choose the type of screen saver to create: "Video based Screen Saver".
- Click on the Next Button. The "Create a New Screen Saver Project" dialog box opens. You can specify Screen saver and Author information in the areas: Title, Description, Name and Copyright.
- 3. Click on the Next button. The application creates a new project window (see below):



- 4. In the **Application window** (1) you see the **menu** and the **main toolbar**. This toolbar can be customized by double-clicking or right-clicking on it. When you select a command in this menu or main toolbar, it acts on the selected item or window.
- 5. In the Librarian (2) you can select the folder that contains the media files (images, animations, music, sounds) that you'll use in your project (3).

CORPORATE EDITION

- 6. The **Project document window** is placed in the working area (④). The application is multidocument enabled. It means that you can create or open several documents in the working area of the application. A local toolbar is located in the document window. If you click on a button in this toolbar (④), it acts on the selected item in the document window. This toolbar cannot be customized.
- The Document window is divided in two parts. In the left side (5) are located the edit dialog boxes that you'll use to set project and slide properties. It is composed of 3 windows that you can activate by clicking on the associated tabs: General, Background and Flash Movie. On the right side (6), a preview window is available.

Adjust general properties

Adjust general properties

1. Activate the Screen Saver window document.

- 2. Choose Project/Project Properties or click on the General Tab
- 3. In the Title area, specify the name of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- **4.** In the **Author** area, specify the author of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 5. In the **Copyright** area, specify the copyright of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.
- 6. In the **Description** area, specify a description of the screen saver. This field will be useful at compile time.

Add/remove video movies in the playlist

A video screensaver can play several movies in sequence. You just have to add them in the project playlist. You can also change the playlist sequence order.

Add video movies to the playlist

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Select the **Playlist** dialog box (click the tab if necessary), click on the **Add** button (**①**). A standard Windows dialog box opens to let you choose the video movie files you want to add. Browse your disks, select the files and click Open.
- 3. The files are added in the playlist (2). The selected video file is displayed in the **Preview** window (9).

4. In the Size group (¹):

- If you check Full screen (maximized) option, it allows to display the video full screen.
- In the Width area, enter here the width of the video window in percent (100% by default).
 The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- In the Height area, enter here the height of the video window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original video clip width.
- If you check **Based on screen size** option, the video size is based on the screen size in percent.



5. In the **Position (center)** group (④):

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the video window on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.
- In the Y area, Enter here the Y coordinate of position of the video window on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.

NOTE: The visible screen coordinates are always specified from (0,0: top-left) to (640,480: bottom-right). Of course if you launch your screen saver on a 1024x768 display for example, the coordinates will be recalculated accordingly.

- 6. Click the Automatically Repeat Forever option (⁶) if you want to play the playlist in loop. If this option is unchecked, the playlist is played once.
- 7. If the **Save a copy of the files in the Project Document** option is checked (**6**), the video file will be stored in the screen saver project (not recommended for large files).
 - If you **check** this option, the animation file will be included into the screen saver file when saved. This option is useful because the animation file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
 - If you **uncheck** this option, the animation file will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved. The SSP file is smaller but the video file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

Add files using Drag & Drop

- 1. Go to the librarian, expand Media Files and select the Movies folder.
- 2. Select the files then drag and drop to the Screen Saver document window.
- 3. The files are added in the playlist (2). The selected video file is displayed in the **Preview** window (9).
- 4. Set the playback options as above.

Add files using the Clipboard (copy/paste)

- 1. Go to the librarian or the built-in Explorer (Ctrl+E), browse your folders and select the files.
- 2. Choose Edit/Copy.
- 3. Return to the project window.
- 4. Choose Edit/Paste.
- The files are added in the playlist (2). The selected video file is displayed in the Preview window (9).
- 6. Set the playback options as above.

Remove files from the playlist

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Select the Playlist dialog box (click the tab if necessary), the video files appear in the playlist (2).

| General (Background (Hards) Depict Explored an Explored an Explore | Add |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Size Eul Screen (maximized) Spools Size Width 100 \$\$ \$ Height 100 \$\$ \$ Width 100 \$\$ \$ Height 100 \$\$ \$ | |
| Automatically Repeat Forever | of the files in the project |

3. Select the video files you want to remove.

<u>TIP</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the CTRL key. To select a range of files, use the SHIFT key.

4. Click on the **Remove** button (**?**). You're prompted to confirm the deletion. Click **YES**.

Change playlist order

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Select the **Playlist** dialog box (click the tab if necessary), the video files appear in the playlist (2) as shown above.
- 3. Select the video file you want to move in the playlist.
- 4. Click on the Up or Down button (⁽³⁾) to move the file.

Change the playlist order

A video screensaver can play several movies in sequence. Once the movie files have been added in the project you can rearrange them to change the playlist sequence order.

Change playlist order

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Select the **Playlist** dialog box (click the tab if necessary), the video files appear in the playlist (2) as shown below:

| eneral Back | ground Playfist Blayfist | Preview |
|---------------|---|---|
| 0 | El galamete avi | Add Restlove Play 8 |
| 8 | Size Eul Screen (maximized) Specific Size Width: 100 2 X Height 100 2 X Width: 100 2 X Height 100 2 X | Position (cester) 2: 220 = Y: 240 = |
| G | Automatically Repeat Forever | y of the files in the project |

- 3. Select the video file you want to move in the playlist.
- 4. Click on the Up or Down button (8) to move the file.

Remove files from the playlist

- 1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.
- 2. Select the **Playlist** dialog box (click the tab if necessary), the video files appear in the playlist (2) as shown above.
- 3. Select the video files you want to remove.

<u>TIP</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the CTRL key. To select a range of files, use the SHIFT key.

4. Click on the **Remove** button (1). You're prompted to confirm the deletion. Click **YES**.

Save the movie files in the project

- 1. Click on the Playlist tab
- 2. If you check the "Save a copy of the files in the project" option, the movie files will be included into the screen saver project file (SSP) when saved. This option is useful because the video files doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- **3.** If you uncheck this option, the files **will NOT be included into the screen saver file when saved**. The SSP file is smaller but the files must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

<u>REMARK</u>: This option is set for all the files in the playlist (not only the selected ones if any).

Adjust the movie display size

1. Click on the **Playlist** tab:

- 2. In the Size group:
 - If you check **Full screen (maximized)** option, it allows to display full screen the animation.
 - In the **Width** area, enter here the width of the animation window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original animation clip width.
 - In the **Height** area, enter here the height of the animation window in percent (100% by default). The final width is based on the original animation clip width.
 - If you check **Based on screen size** option, the animation size is based on the screen size in percent.

<u>REMARK</u>: This option is set for all the files in the playlist (not only the selected ones if any).

Adjust the Flash® movie position on screen

1. Click on the **Playlist** tab.

2. In the Position (center) group:

- In the X area, enter here the X coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -640 to 1280). 0 means the left border and 640 the right border of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.
- In the Y area, enter here the Y coordinate of position of the video windows on screen (from -480 to 960). 0 means the top and 640 the bottom of the screen. This value indicates the position of the center of the video window.

<u>REMARK</u>: This option is set for all the files in the playlist (not only the selected ones if any).

Customize the screen saver background

Customize the screen saver background

1. Activate the Screen Saver Document window.

2. Choose Project/Background Properties or Click on the Background tab.

3. If you check the Image Wallpaper button:

- In the Pathname area, specify the full pathname of the bitmap file to use for the background. You can also click Browse to locate the file using a standard Windows® dialog box.
- Specify the way you want the background image to be displayed:

Stretch: Means that the image will be stretched to fit the entire screen. The image may be distorted when stretched.

Center: Means that the image will be displayed centered on screen at scale 1:1. If the image is smaller than the screen, the visible background is black.

Tile: Means that the image will be repeated at scale 1:1 to make a tiled background.

- **4.** If you check the **Gradient** button:
 - In the **From color** area, specify the first color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the left border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the top of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
 - In the **To Color** area, specify the second color of the gradient. If the gradient is horizontal, this is the color on the right border of the screen. If the gradient is vertical, this is the color at the bottom of the screen. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.
 - Specify a Vertical gradient.
 - Specify a Horizontal gradient.
 - Specify a **Mirror gradient**. It means that the second color is placed at the center of the screen and the first color is placed on screen borders.

5. If you check the Solid Color button:

• In the **Color** area, specify the chosen solid color. Just click on the combo-box and choose your color. You can also define a custom color.

Save the project (SSP file)

To create a screen saver, you must before create a Project (.SSP file).

IMPORTANT: Only SSP files can be saved/reloaded/modified in the built-in editor window.

Then to create a Windows compatible Screen Saver (.SCR file) you have just to compile this project. The Screen Saver (.SCR) that has been created can't be modified or decompiled.

Save the Project to a SSP file

1. Choose File Save or File Save As.

2. Choose the directory and enter the new project name .SSP.

or

- 1. Select the folder in the librarian.
- 2. Select the active project window.
- 3. Click on the Add to the Librarian button in the local toolbar.
- **4.** The dialog box **Add a project to the librarian** opens. Specify the new project name. The default extension is SSP.

Test the screen saver full screen

You can test the Screen Saver Project using full screen resolution.

1. Choose Project/Test Full screen or F11.

Compile a screen saver file

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the SCR file can't be modified or decompiled. Don't loose your SSP file!

To learn how to create a SCR screensaver from your project, read this topic (later in this chapter): **Compile a screen saver file (SCR)**

Compile an installable package

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers. You can choose to create an installation package (strongly recommended).

During this compilation process, the project will first be compiled as a SCR file. Then, this file will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package.

<u>REMARK</u>: Using this compilation method you can create demo/limited versions of your screensavers.

Create an installable screen saver package

To learn how to create a install package from your project, read this topic: <u>Compile an installable</u> <u>screen saver file (EXE)</u>

Install a screensaver on a computer using an install package

When a screensaver is compiled as an install package, the installation is very simple for the end user.

- 1. Launch the install package. A dialog box opens.
- 2. Follow the installation wizard. Accept the license agreement if any.
- 3. The screensavers is installed (as default if asked by the user).

Compile a Windows® screen saver (SCR file)

Compile a Windows® screen saver (SCR file)

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created is compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the SCR file can't be modified or decompiled. Don't loose your SSP file!

Step 1 - Specify a filename and location

Once your project is created, you can compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created will be compatible with Windows screen savers (.SCR). When compiled, you'll be able to use it personally on your computer or to distribute it as is. No install procedure will be created.

IMPORTANT: Once created, the **SCR file can't be modified or decompiled**. We recommend you to <u>save your project</u> to a SSP file before compiling it. Don't loose your SSP file!

 Choose Project/Compile a Screen Saver File (F4) or click on the Compile SCR File button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (1) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| Please specify the name and location of the file to create: glename: Tutorial1 2.su Location: Ci/WINNT/System32 3 | |
|---|----------|
| Location: C:/WINNT/System32 3 | ICR |
| | - |
| | ler] |

Specify the Screen Saver Filename and Location

- 1. In the Filename area (2), specify the name of the file to create. You don't need to specify an extension here (.SCR by default).
- 2. In the Location area (3), specify the folder where you want to create the file. If you want to redistribute this SCR file, specify your output folder. You must type a folder full pathname here. If you want to use this screensaver on your computer only, do not modify the proposed entry (see below).
- 3. If you check the "Place it in my personal Windows System folder" option (4), it allows to specify the Windows® System folder as the destination location. In such a case, the screensaver will be visible in Windows® screensaver settings list (see <u>What is a screensaver</u> for more info).

Change the default Windows Screen Saver

When you compile your screensaver, the application allows you to set it as the current Windows® screen saver.

- 4. If you check the "Set it as the Current Windows Screen Saver" option (5), it allows to set the compiled screen saver as the current Windows® screen saver. The fields 3 and 3 are disabled because they're set by default when you choose to set your screensaver as Windows® default.
- **5.** When done, click the **Next** button. If the specified file already exists, you'll be prompted to confirm the overwriting.

Step 2 - Specify a description, configure a RSS reader

You can customize your screen saver by specifying a Title, a Copyright, a Web and a Comment. This information will be displayed in the Configure dialog box of the screen saver.

Also, the screensaver you'll compile will include a RSS reader. You just have to configure it in this compilation step to activate it. RSS is a new way to publish information online. Think of it as a distributable "What's New" for your site.

The Step 2 dialog box looks like this:

| | Descrip You can cust Copyright, W | Dtion ontre your screen saver by specifying a Title, /eb link, Comment as well as RSS feed URLs. |
|---|---|--|
| |]jtle: | Tutorials |
| | ⊆opyright: | Copyright @ 2004 Axialis Software - All rights res |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver - Please do not distribute |
| 0 | 855 Feeds: | Enable RSS Read Specify URLs_ |

Describe the Screen Saver

- **1.** In the **Title** area (**1**), specify the Title of the screen saver. This title will be displayed in the Splash screen (if you choose the standard splash screen) and in the 'Properties' dialog box.
- 2. In the **Copyright** area (2), specify a Copyright associated with the screen saver. This copyright will be displayed in the Splash screen (if you choose the standard splash screen) and in the 'Properties' dialog box.
- 3. In the Web Site area (2), specify the Web Address of your personal page or company site (for example: http://www.axialis.com). This Web Address will be displayed in the 'Properties' dialog box as a real hyperlink (the user will be able to click on it).
- 4. In the **Comment** area (2), specify a Comment associated with the screen saver. This comment will be displayed in the 'Properties' dialog box (1024 characters maxi). If the text is too long to be displayed in the dialog box it will scroll vertically.

Configure the RSS reader

With Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer you can screensavers with a RSS reader embedded. RSS, which means "Really Simple Syndication", is a new way to publish information online. Think of it as a distributable "What's New" for your site.

At the heart of the technology is special Web coding, called XML, which has been widely developed by the online community over the past few years. Anyone can pick up the RSS codes and with the appropriate software display the information.

A RSS reader is included in the screensavers you will compile. You just have to create your own online RSS feeds (see tutorial link below) and add the URLs to them in the above list. Adding RSS news in your screensaver is a great idea.

IMPORTANT: If your screensaver includes a RSS reader, it will attempt to access the Internet. This may pop-up a firewall alert on the end-user computer. An Internet access may be considered as suspicious by the this user (malicious codes like virus or trojans act like this). We strongly recommend to inform the end-user about this.

7. To activate the RSS reader and specify feeds, in the RSS feeds zone, click on the Enable RSS Reader option (³) as shown above. The Specify URLs button is activated. Click on this button, a second dialog box opens:

| Source URLs (one URL per line): | |
|--|--|
| http://www.axials.com/iss/ | `0 |
| Allow the user to change, add or re Most is PSS2 | move URLs 2 |
| Depending on who you ask, RSS sta Simple Syndication." But no matter w information online. Think of it as a di | nds for either "Rich Site Summary" or "Really that it's called, RSS is a new way to publish stributable "What's New" for your site. |
| At the heart of the technology is spi widely developed by the online comm pick up the RSS codes and with the | ecial Web coding, called XML, which has been nunky over the past few years. Anyone can appropriate software display the information. |
| A RSS reader is included in the scree create your own online RSS feeds (s them in the above list. Adding RSS n | nsavers you will compile. You just have to see tutorial link below() and add the URLs to ews in your screensaver is a great idea. |
| Avials.855.Feeds | 855.Tutorial for Webmasters |
| | |
8. In the Source URLs zone (**0**), enter the feed URLs you wish to use in the reader. Specify one URL per line. The reader will downloads the news in all URLs when the screensaver starts and display them all in sequence.

You can also specify **UNC network paths** to XML files. It could be useful to publish news via the screensaver on all the computers installed in your company. For example, specify: "**MainServer\CommonFiles\News\daily-news.xml**"

- 9. If you want to allow the user to modify these URLs (add/remove) once the screensaver is installed, click on the associated option (2). When done click OK. Continue with the compilation wizard.
- **10.** Once the compiled screensaver is installed, the RSS reader will access the internet each time it starts (in background), get the news and display them is a small window in the lower-right corner of the screen:



<u>REMARK</u>: The end user can enable/disable the RSS reader and change URLs (if you allowed it) from the screensaver "configure" dialog box.

Step 3 - Customize icon and dialog box image

A screensaver is a program (see **What is a screensaver** topic in chapter 2. Therefore, it contains an icon. This icon is used to display it in Windows Explorer or when you create a Shortcut to it in the Desktop for example. A standard icon is used but it's now possible to customize it.

Also, your screensaver contains a "Customize" dialog box. You can customize the illustration image that is included in this window.

What is an icon?

An icon is a graphic image, a small picture or object that represents a file, program, web page, or command. Icons help you execute commands, open programs or documents quickly. To execute a command by using an icon, click or double-click on the icon. It is also useful to recognize quickly an object in a browser list.

That's almost all you need to know if you only use icons. But you want to use (or create) icons for the screensaver customization feature, you need to know more about them.

What are the differences between an image and an icon?

A computer image is a bitmap (composed of pixels) or vector (composed of drawing paths) picture, which can be saved using various formats (BMP, PNG, GIF, JPEG, WMF...). All these formats have several different properties (bitmaps, vectors, compressed, layered, animated...) and can be used to store pictures at any sizes and resolution.

Icons are different from standard images. They are have standard sizes (usually small): 16x16, 32x32, 48x48... One icon is composed of several images. Each of them with a different size and number of colors (mono, 16 colors, 256 colors, 16.8M...). And the most important property of an icon is the ability

to include transparent areas. This allows seeing the screen background behind the icon within its square image.

What is the structure of an icon?

As we've seen in previous paragraph, an icon is a group of images of various formats (size and colors). Furthermore, each image can include transparent area. That's why you'll find a transparent color in the drawing palette for 16 or 256 color images and a variable opacity parameter for the new Windows XP format (opacity = 0 means transparent).



Example of icon containing various image formats

What kind of icons can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the icon must be Windows compliant (ICO format) contain <u>at least</u> the following image formats:

| • 16x16 - 256 colors | 16x16 - Windows XP |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| • 32x32 - 256 colors | 32x32 - Windows XP |
| • 48x48 - 256 colors | 48x48 - Windows XP |

How to create my own icons?

Axialis Software has released an icon editor that will permit you to easily create your own icons in a few minutes: <u>Axialis IconWorkshop</u>. This professional tool will permit to create icons with several formats from images in a few clicks. You can download a shareware version from <u>www.axialis.com</u> and test it for 30 days.

Customize the screensaver icon

1. The Step 3 dialog box looks like this:

| | You can customize your screen saver by adding a or the "Configure" dialog and a custom icon in the SCR | ustom image in file. |
|---|--|-------------------------|
| 2 | C:\axials\ax screensaver ; Recommended image size is 400 i so point. Only EMD, VERS and PR03 formats are supported. | |
| • | et/fauxs-26.ico | |
| 9 | Custom score must only and asiatity contains the following image formats - 16-16, 256 colors - 16-16, 207 format 12-12, 256 colors - 12-20, 207 format - 40-40, 205 format | |

- 2. Click on the option Use a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file to activate it (2). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **3.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your ICO file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 4. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the icon image in the window on right.
- **5.** If this is the right icon, click **Next**. If the icon has the correct format (see specs above), you can continue the compilation wizard.

Customize the screensaver image

The screensaver that you'll create will contain a Customize dialog box. The application permits you to customize the illustration image that is included in this window (**0**):

| | Galan e | Wer |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Axialis So | ftware Slogan | ivel |
| Web Site: http:// | neware - mare cruix | |
| Mute Sound | Disble Multimonitor Support | R\$5. |
| Commercial Distribution | n is hereby granted to the author(j). | - |

What kind of images can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the image file must have the JPEG, BMP or PNG format. Also, we recommend you to use an image with the following dimension: Width = 400, Height = 90.

How to create my illustration image?

Create this image using an external application like <u>Photoshop®</u> (professional tool), <u>Paint Shop Pro®</u> (shareware tool) or <u>Gimp®</u> (free tool).

1. The Step 3 dialog box looks like this:

CORPORATE EDITION

| N | Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dialog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|----------|--|
| <u> </u> | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box: |
| | cı\axialis\ax.screensaver.c |
| 10 | Recommended image size it 400 s to poes. Only BMO, /PEG and FeVG fermalit are tupported. |
| • | Vige a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file: |
| · · | et/fauxs-26.ico |
| 9 | Custom icons mupt coly and assetty contains the following image formats: - Vicili, 256 colors - 12/20, XP format - 32/12, 256 colors - 32/32, XP format - 40/46, 255 colors - 40/46, XP format |

- 2. Click on the option Use a custom image in Configure dialog box to activate it (**0**). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **3.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your image file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 4. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the image in the window on right.
- 5. If this is the right image, click Next. You can continue the compilation wizard.

Step 4 - Specify the splash screen parameters

When you the Screen Saver starts, it displays a splash screen during a few seconds. By default, it displays a text splash screen with the information of the previous screen. But you can specify a custom image (BMP, JPEG, PNG) to replace the default screen.

The Step 4 dialog box looks like this:

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Step 4 of 6 | ? × |
|-------------------|---|--|
| | Splash Screen when the Screen Saver starts, it displays a seconds. By default it displays a text splash information from the previous screen, but y image (BMP, JPEG, PNG) to replace the text No Splash Screen Display a Text Splash Screen Display an Image based Splash Screen I | e splash screen for a few h screen with the rou can specify a custom n. play Time Seconds |
| in axialis | Next >> | Cancel |

The Splash Screen Parameters

- 1. If you don't want a splash screen, select No Splash Screen option
- 2. If you select the **Display a Text Splash Screen** option, a standard window will display the screen saver Title and the Copyright text.
- **3**. If you want to display a custom splash screen based on an image, select the **Display an Image Based Splash Screen** option. In the **Pathname** area, specify the full pathname (name and location) of the desired splash bitmap. Supported file formats are BMP, JPEG and PNG. The image size must be smaller than 640x480. You can click the "..." button to browse your disks using a standard Windows dialog box. When done, the **Preview** area displays a small picture of the selected bitmap file.
- 4. In the Display Time area, specify the display delay of the splash screen in seconds.
- 5. When done, Click Next button.

Step 5 - Specify the preview parameters

When the user selects a screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it appears in a small preview window (1):



By default, a reduced animated preview is displayed but you can also specify a custom or a standard static image. The Step 5 dialog box looks like this:

CORPORATE EDITION

| - | Preview Wind | dow |
|----|--|---|
| | When the user selects a appears in a small previe preview is displayed but standard static image. | screensaver in Windows Control Panel, it w window. By default, a reduced animy you can also specify a custom or a |
| | Animated Preview (r | eal preview of the screen saver) |
| | 😑 No Preview - Default | Image |
| 17 | 😑 No Preview - Custon | Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PNG): |
| | 2 | -) |
| | | Displaying an animated preview is not recommended with Vides screensavers (final user may experience technical issues). |
| - | | Image recommanded size is 152 s 112 pixels. |

Specify an Animated Preview

- **1.** If you want to display a standard Animated Preview Window (small sprites, flash, video), choose the **Animated Preview** option (**1**).
- 2. When the user will select the screen saver in the Windows Control Panel, it will display a small moving preview of the screensaver. When done, click Next.

IMPORTANT: We DO NOT recommend using a classic animated preview for **Video** based screensavers (especially for large video files). Some Windows versions/configurations may cause the screensaver preview to crash under special circumstances.

Specify a Static Preview Image

If you don't want the animated preview, you can choose to display a static image. Two options are available for the static image:

- **1.** Select **No Preview Default Image** if you don't want to design an image by yourself. In this case, the application will display a default image (a computer screen displaying a screen saver).
- 2. Select No Preview Custom Static Image if you want to specify an image you've designed using an external drawing program. Only BMP, PNG or JPEG files are supported for preview images. If you choose this option you must specify an image file in the area below. You can click the "..." button to browse your disks using a standard Windows dialog box. For better results, we recommend you to resize the image to 152 x 112.
- 3. When done, click Next.

IMPORTANT: We STRONGLY recommend static preview image for **Video** based screensavers (especially for large video files). Some Windows versions/configurations may cause the screensaver preview to crash under special circumstances.

Step 6 - Compilation Summary

This dialog box summarizes all the parameters of the compilation. We recommend you to read this summary carefully before proceeding.

Compilation Summary

- 1. Read the compilation summary.
- 2. Read carefully the note about copyright. Click the More Info About Copyright button:
- 3. When you're ready to go, click the Go and Compile! button.

Compilation

This dialog box displays the compilation process running. You can stop the compilation at any time. The Compilation dialog box looks like this:

| Compile a SCR Scr | een Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|-------------------|---|-----|
| - | Compilation | |
| 0 | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compiling your project | |
| | Y Creating Temporary Files | |
| | Compressing Images | |
| | Writing SCR file | |
| | Verifying Screen Saver File | |
| • | Ompilation Successfully Completed. | |
| | 📄 👔 last the Sarson Saver Kom 🚽 | 0 |
| 9 | Test the Properties Dialog Box Now 🖤 | - |
| axialis | | 50 |

Compilation Process

- You can test the screensaver fullscreen now. Click on the Test the Screen Saver Now button (0).
- You can also test the screensaver Properties dialog box. See <u>What is a screensaver</u> topic for more info about the properties/configure dialog box (see "How to install a screensaver", button "Settings"). Click on the **Test the Properties Dialog Box Now** button (2).
- **3.** As you chose to install this screensaver as Windows® default (in Step 1), it will start automatically after a certain period of inactivity of your computer (depends on what you've configured in Windows® Control Panel). Click **Close** to finish.

Compile an installable screen saver file (EXE)

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created is compatible with Windows screen savers. But this file is not easy to <u>install on a computer</u> for a beginner. That's why we strongly recommend you to create an installation package. Furthermore, a few additional options are available when you compile an installation package.

During this process, the project will be compiled as a temporary SCR file and it will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package (EXE file).

Once created, the **EXE/SCR file can't be modified or decompiled**. Save your project and don't loose your SSP file!

Using this compilation method you can create demo/limited versions of your screensavers.

How to install a screensaver using an installable package

When a screensaver is compiled as an install package, the installation is very simple for the end user:

- 1. Launch the install package. A dialog box opens.
- 2. Follow the installation wizard. Accept the license agreement if any.
- 3. The screensavers is installed (as default if asked by the user).

Step 1 - Specify the filename and location of the install package

Once your project is created, you must compile your screensaver in order to be installed on the end-user computer. The file that will be created is compatible with Windows screen savers. But this file is not easy to <u>install on a computer</u> for a beginner. That's why we strongly recommend you to create an installation package. Furthermore, a few additional options are available when you compile an installation package.

During this process, the project will be compiled as a temporary SCR file and it will be compressed and included in an easy-to-use installation package (EXE file).

IMPORTANT: Once created, the **SCR file can't be modified or decompiled**. We recommend you to <u>save your project</u> to a SSP file before compiling it. Don't loose your SSP file!

 Choose Project/Compile an Installable Screen Saver File (Shift+F4) or click on the Compile Installable Screen Saver button in the toolbar. A dialog box opens (see below). Keep in mind that you can click on the context help button (①) if you need get more information on a specific element of a dialog box.

| > | Filenames and Location 0 |
|---|--|
| | You are about to create a new installable screensaver. First, it wi be compiled as a SCR file, then included in an installation package |
| | Screensaver File |
| | Please specify the final filename of the screensaver (the name of the SCR file after the installation): |
| ~ | Screensaver: Tutorial1 .SCR |
| | Installation File |
| | Specify the name and the location of the installation file that will be created: |
| | Elename: TutoriatInstal |
| - | Location: E:\ |
| | |

Specify the Filename and Location of the Install file to create

- 2. In the Screensaver field (2), specify the name of the SCR file to create (do not specify the SCR extension). You can keep the proposed name. This is the filename that will be installed on the end-user computer. This file will not be created on your computer during this compilation. It will be embedded in the install package.
- **3.** In the **Filename** field (**3**), specify the name of the **Install** file to create (usually **Install.exe**). Do not specify the EXE extension.
- 4. In the Location field (4), specify the folder where you want to create the install file on your computer. You can use the button [...] to browse your folders.
- 5. When done, click Next.

Step 2 - Specify the installation properties, advanced customization

The install procedure has a built-in multi-language support. You can specify a fixed language or let Install determine the language used by the end user. The install also support a multi-volume configuration. This feature permits you to distribute your package in one large file or in several files which can be copied on a set of floppy disks.

Also, you'll be able to fully customize the installation package (image, icon, window style, colors, options...). The Step 2 dialog box looks like this:

| 1 | Installat | ion Package Properties | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|--|----|
| | The installation force a particul | procedure supports several languages. You ar language or let the program choose at rys | 0 |
| <u>-Щ ж</u> | Language: | Automatic (Based on Windows Settings) | - |
| R | The final packa | ge can be a single solid file or a set of files: | 0 |
| | Pagkage: | Solid Install (one file - Internet or CO-ROM) | ~ |
| | Advanced The instal Wizard inc | Layout Customization lation procedure layout can be customized: age, install icon, options, text color | .6 |
| - | | Advanced Customization | |
| | | | _ |

Specify the Language of the Installation Package

In the Language field (①), select "Automatic (based on Windows settings)". You can here choose the desired language for the screensaver and install procedure. 8 languages are supported: English, French, Spanish, German, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch and Russian. By selecting Automatic, the install procedure will choose the language by itself based on the end-user Windows language. You can also force a specific language.

Specify the Installation Package format

- 2. The final package can be a single solid or composed of a set of files (useful for floppy distribution). Choose an option in the list (2):
 - Solid install (one file -Internet or CD-ROM distribution): The produced package is a single install file. It can be a very large file. This is interesting to distribute the package by download using Internet or on CD-ROM
 - **1.44 MB Install (several files HD floppy distribution)**: The produced package is a set of files. Each file size cannot exceed 1.44 Mb. The first file has a EXE extension, the other files are automatically indexed 001,001.. This is very interesting to distribute the package on HD floppy disks
 - 2.88 MB Install (several files HHD floppy distribution): The produced package is a set of files. Each file size cannot exceed 2.88 Mb. The first file has a EXE extension, the other files are automatically indexed 001,001.. This is very interesting to distribute the package on HHD floppy disks.

Customization of the install package

If you want to customize the installation package, click the Advanced Customization button

 A secondary dialog box opens:

| Recommended image size is 500 x 60 pixels. Only B JPEG and PMG formats are supported. | ND, |
|--|--|
| c:\axialis\ax screensaver producer\restocu | mert 🔄 🖂 6 |
| - 32x32, 256 colors - 32x32, XP format - 48x48, 255 colors - 48x48, XP format Advanced | |
| Display Title & Copyright in the Top Image | Show Instal Options Open Display Properties after Instal Create a Start Menu Entry |
| Lavret Style: Automatic | Create a E 😏 p Icon Display Comment Text (if any) |
| Ealoor schot Latoniane | |

Customize the installation illustration image

A standard image is used to illustrate the installation wizard but it's possible to customize it. The image will be located at the top of the installation window.

What kind of images can I use to customize my installation package?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the image file must have the JPEG, BMP or PNG format. Also, we recommend you to use an image with the following dimension: Width = 500, Height = 60.

How to create my illustration image?

Create this image using an external application like <u>Photoshop®</u> (professional tool), <u>Paint Shop Pro®</u> (shareware tool) or <u>Gimp®</u> (free tool).

- **4.** Click on the option **Use a custom image in the Installation Wizard** to activate it (**1**). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- 5. In the edit zone (2), enter the full path to your image file on your disk or click the [...] button
 (2) to browse your disks and locate the image file using a standard Windows dialog box. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the image in the window on right (3).

Customize the installation icon

The install package is a program. Therefore, it contain an icon. This icon is used to display it in Windows Explorer or when you create a Shortcut to it in the Desktop for example. A standard icon is used but it's now possible to customize it. The image will be located at the top of the installation window. To get more information about the icon, read <u>What is an icon</u> topic below.

- 6. Click on the option Use a custom icon for the Installation file to activate it (④). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- 7. In the edit zone (S), enter the full path to your image file on your disk or click the [...] button
 (S) to browse your disks and locate the icon file using a standard Windows dialog box. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the icon in the window on right (G).

Advanced Customization

| e:\installdialogbitmapdark.jpg | | | |
|--|--------------------------|--|---|
| Recommended image size is 500 x 60 pi JPEG and PNG formats are supported. | on file: | | |
| c:\axialis\ax screensaver produce | rivestocument | | 54 6 |
| Custom icons must contain the following - 16x16, 256 colors - 16x16, XP format - 32x32, 256 colors - 32x32, XP format - 48x48, 255 colors - 48x48, XP format | image formats: t t | | |
| Custern icons must contain the following - 16x15, 256 colors - 16x16, XP format - 32x32, 256 colors - 32x32, XP format - 48x48, 255 colors - 48x48, XP format Advanced Disclay Title & Copyright in the To | image formats: | Show Instal Opti | ons |
| Custern icons must contain the following - 16x15, 256 colors - 16x16, XP format - 32x22, 256 colors - 32x32, XP format - 48x48, XP format Advanced V Display Title & Copyright in the To Text Color: | image formats: | Show Install Opti Open Display Pro | oris perties after Insta |
| Custern icons must contain the following - 16x15, 255 colors - 16x16, XP format - 32x32, 255 colors - 32x32, XP format - 45x46, XP format Advanced See Display Title & Copyright in the To I exit Color: | image formats: | Show Instal Opti Open Display Pro Create a Stort M Create a L | ons perties after Insta enu Entry J Coon |
| Custern icons must contain the following - 16x15, 256 colors - 16x16, XP format - 32x32, 256 colors - 32x32, XP format - 45x46, 255 colors - 45x46, XP format Advanced Display Title & Copyright in the To Iext Color: Layout Style: Automatic | image formats: | Show Install Opti Open Display Pro Create a Su- M Create a E 9 ; Display Comment | ons perties after Insta enu Entry I Con Text (If any) |

8. Click the **Display Title and Copyright in the Top Image** option (?) if you want a **Title Text** displayed in the top image. If you don't select this option, only the image will be displayed. This is interesting if you want to create the text in the image using a graphic editor. If you choose this option, you can adjust the text color in the field **Text Color** (below the option check box).

9. In the Layout Style field (8), you can choose the style of the window style:

- **Automatic** The style will be chosen by the install procedure at execution depending on the end-user Windows version. One of the two following styles will be chosen.
- Windows Classic The classic Windows style will be forced (Windows ME/2000 style).
- Windows XP A Windows XP style will be forced (coloured style).
- 10. In the XP Dialog Color field (⁽³⁾), specify the overall color (tint) of the Windows XP layout (if the XP layout style is used).
- 11. If the Show Install Options is chosen (⁽⁹⁾), some options will be proposed to the end user in the first screen of the installation wizard. Options are:
 - Set as Default Windows Screen Saver The user can set the screen saver as the default.
 - Open Display Properties After Installation The user can choose to display the Windows Display Properties dialog box after the installation.
 - Create a Start Menu Entry The user can choose to create an entry in the Start menu to launch or uninstall the screensaver.
 - **Create a Desktop Icon** The user can choose to create a Desktop icon (shortcut) to launch the screensaver.

<u>REMARK</u>: If you don't display these options, the user won't be able to change them during installation. It does not mean that these features won't be executed. You can choose to activate some of them (see options below) even if you decide to hide them.

12. If the **Open Display Properties after Install** is chosen (**9**), the standard Windows® Display Properties dialog box will be opened at the end of installation procedure. In this window you can

select the actual screensaver and set its properties. If you have chosen to activate the **Show Install Options** feature (see above) the user will be able to change this option.

- 13. If the Create a Start Menu Entry option is chosen (⁽⁹⁾), an entry in the Windows® Start Menu will be created to launch or uninstall the screen saver. If you have chosen to activate the Show Install Options feature (see above) the user will be able to change this option.
- 14. If the Create Desktop Icon option is chosen (9), a shortcut will be created on the Windows® Desktop to easily launch the screen saver. If you have chosen to activate the Show Install Options feature (see above) the user will be able to change this option.
- 15. Your screen saver contains a comment text. This text is displayed in the Properties Dialog box (a scrolling area). If the **Display Comment Text** option is chosen (9), this text is also displayed during the installation procedure. This may be useful to inform the user about the screen saver before it is installed.
- **16.** If the **Include an Uninstall Procedure** option is chosen (**9**), a program to uninstall the screensaver will be installed on the users computer. This will permit the user to easily uninstall the screensaver if necessary. We strongly recommend you include this uninstall procedure.
- 17. If the **Propose Uninstall if Already Installed** option is chosen (9), the installation wizard will prompt the user to uninstall the screen saver if it is already present on his computer.

<u>REMARK</u>: This feature is different than the above uninstall procedure. It has been implemented to keep compatibility with previous versions. We strongly recommend you to use the new uninstall procedure.

18. When done, click the OK button. Click Next to go to Step 3.

What is an icon?

An icon is a graphic image, a small picture or object that represents a file, program, web page, or command. Icons help you execute commands, open programs or documents quickly. To execute a command by using an icon, click or double-click on the icon. It is also useful to recognize quickly an object in a browser list.

That's almost all you need to know if you only use icons. But you want to use (or create) icons for the screensaver customization feature, you need to know more about them.

What are the differences between an image and an icon?

A computer image is a bitmap (composed of pixels) or vector (composed of drawing paths) picture, which can be saved using various formats (BMP, PNG, GIF, JPEG, WMF...). All these formats have several different properties (bitmaps, vectors, compressed, layered, animated...) and can be used to store pictures at any sizes and resolution.

Icons are different from standard images. They are have standard sizes (usually small): 16x16, 32x32, 48x48... One icon is composed of several images. Each of them with a different size and number of colors (mono, 16 colors, 256 colors, 16.8M...). And the most important property of an icon is the ability to include transparent areas. This allows seeing the screen background behind the icon within its square image.

What is the structure of an icon?

As we've seen in previous paragraph, an icon is a group of images of various formats (size and colors). Furthermore, each image can include transparent area. That's why you'll find a transparent color in the drawing palette for 16 or 256 color images and a variable opacity parameter for the new Windows XP format (opacity = 0 means transparent).

What kind of icons can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the icon must be Windows compliant (ICO format) contain <u>at least</u> the following image formats:

16x16 - 256 colors
 32x32 - 256 colors
 48x48 - 256 colors
 48x48 - Windows XP
 48x48 - Windows XP

How to create my own icons?

Axialis Software has released an icon editor that will permit you to easily create your own icons in a few minutes: <u>Axialis IconWorkshop</u>. This professional tool will permit to create icons with several formats from images in a few clicks. You can download a shareware version from <u>www.axialis.com</u> and test it for 30 days.

Step 3 - Specify the User License Agreement

You can specify a User License Agreement text that will be displayed before the installation starts. The user must agree with this agreement to proceed.

The Step 3 dialog box looks like this:

| rts. O ser must agree w | ith . |
|---|---|
| | - |
| - | 2 |
| ram. By installing the this Agreement. If you do sement, guit this installation i files. | - |
| aver (the "Software") is protected by international | * |
| LoadDefault | |
| | ement, quit this instalaboo files. aver (the "Software") is protected by international |

Specify a User License Agreement

- If you want a License Agreement to be displayed during the installation, select the option Add a User License Agreement. If you don't want to add an agreement, unselect this option and click Next button.
- 2. Once you've selected this option, the text area and the buttons below activate.
- **3.** In the Text area, specify the User License Agreement Text. The text can be multi-language using codes (placed in the text body) that permit you to define conditional portions. A conditional portion begins with #if and ends with a #endif. If a text line is not in a conditional portion, it is always displayed. The language codes supported by the installation package are: **ENGLISH**, **FRENCH**, **SPANISH**, **GERMAN**, **ITALIAN**, **DUTCH**, **PORTUGUESE** and **RUSSIAN**.

Example:

```
#if ENGLISH
... Text using english language ..
#endif
... Text always displayed ..
#if FRENCH
... Text using french language ..
#endif
```

You can also specify macros that will be automatically replaced by its related variable text at runtime (see below). A macro must be specified between brackets $\{..\}$:

{CompanyName} - Your company name.

{ScreenSaverTitle} - The screen saver title.

{InstalledScrFileName} - The full pathname of the installed screen saver.

- 4. Click on the Load text button to load a User License Agreement text from an external file
- 5. Click on the Save text button to save the User License Agreement text to an external file
- 6. Click on the Load Default text button to replace the current User License Agreement text by the default Axialis Screen Saver Producer text. The current text will be overwritten.
- 7. When done, click the Next button.

Step 4 - Specify the screensaver filename and description

You can customize your screen saver by specifying a Title, a Copyright, a Web and a Comment. This information will be displayed in the Configure dialog box of the screen saver. You also have to specify the name of the SCR file that will be installed on the end-user computer.

The Step 4 dialog box looks like this:

| | Screen You can cust Copyright, W | saver Information omize your screen saver by specifyi reb link, Comment as well as RSS fee | ng a Title, 0 ed URLs. |
|---|--|--|---------------------------|
| | | Tutorial3 | |
| | ⊆opyright: | ight © 2004 Axials Software | < N |
| 1 | Web Site: | http://www.axialis.com | 1 |
| - | Company: | Axialis Software | -0 |
| | Comment: | This is a test screensaver | / |
| 0 | BSS: | Enable RSS R 🚯 🗌 Spec | cify URLs |

Specify the Name of the Screen Saver File

1. In the **Filename** area, specify the name of the Screen Saver file (the name SCR file after installation). You don't need to specify an extension (.SCR by dafault). This is the name of the file that will be installed on the end-user computer.

OUR ADVICE: We recommend you to specify a long filename to your SCR file because this is the name that will appear in the end-user available screen saver list (in the Control Panel screensaver properties dialog box). For example specify "**My New York Trip.scr**" rather than "**NEWYORK.SCR**".

Describing the Screen Saver

- **2.** In the **Title** area, specify the Title of the screen saver. This title will be displayed in the Splash screen (if you choose the standard splash screen) and in the 'Properties' dialog box.
- **3.** In the **Copyright** area, specify a Copyright associated with the screen saver. This copyright will be displayed in the Splash screen (if you choose the standard splash screen) and in the 'Properties' dialog box.
- **4.** In the **Web Site** area, specify the Web Address of your personal page or company site (for example: http://www.axialis.com). This Web Address will be displayed in the 'Properties' dialog box as a real hyperlink (the user will be able to click on it).
- **5.** In the **Company** area, specify the name of the company that will appear in the screensaver install procedure.
- 6. In the **Comment** area, specify a Comment associated with the screen saver. This comment will be displayed in the 'Properties' dialog box (1024 characters maxi). If the text is too long to be displayed in the dialog box it will scroll vertically.
- 7. When done, click the Next button.

Configure the RSS reader

With Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer you can screensavers with a RSS reader embedded. RSS, which means "Really Simple Syndication", is a new way to publish information online. Think of it as a distributable "What's New" for your site.

At the heart of the technology is special Web coding, called XML, which has been widely developed by the online community over the past few years. Anyone can pick up the RSS codes and with the appropriate software display the information.

A RSS reader is included in the screensavers you will compile. You just have to create your own online RSS feeds (see tutorial link below) and add the URLs to them in the above list. Adding RSS news in your screensaver is a great idea.

IMPORTANT: If your screensaver includes a RSS reader, it will attempt to access the Internet. This may pop-up a firewall alert on the end-user computer. An Internet access may be considered as suspicious by the this user (malicious codes like virus or trojans act like this). We strongly recommend to inform the end-user about this.

7. To activate the RSS reader and specify feeds, in the RSS feeds zone, click on the Enable RSS Reader option (3) as shown above. The Specify URLs button is activated. Click on this button, a second dialog box opens:

| iource URLs (one URL per line): | |
|--|---|
| http://www.axiaks.com/rss/ | 0 |
| Allow the user to change, add | or remove URLs 🔶 🕗 |
| 🔮 What is RSS? | |
| Depending on who you ask, RSS Simple Syndication." But no matt information online. Think of it as | stands for either "Rich Site Summary" or "Really er what it's called, RSS is a new way to publish a distributable "What's New" for your site. |
| At the heart of the technology is widely developed by the online of pick up the RSS codes and with t | special Web coding, called XML, which has been ommunity over the past few years. Anyone can he appropriate software display the information. |
| A RSS reader is included in the s create your own online RSS feet them in the above list. Adding R | creensavers you will compile. You just have to Is (see tutorial link below) and add the URLs to S5 news in your screensaver is a great idea. |
| Avials R55 Feeds | 855. Tutorial for Webmasters |
| A NOT THE REAL PROPERTY OF | |

8. In the Source URLs zone (**0**), enter the feed URLs you wish to use in the reader. Specify one URL per line. The reader will downloads the news in all URLs when the screensaver starts and display them all in sequence.

You can also specify **UNC network paths** to XML files. It could be useful to publish news via the screensaver on all the computers installed in your company. For example, specify: "**MainServer\CommonFiles\News\daily-news.xml**"

- 9. If you want to allow the user to modify these URLs (add/remove) once the screensaver is installed, click on the associated option (2). When done click OK. Continue with the compilation wizard.
- **10.** Once the compiled screensaver is installed, the RSS reader will access the internet each time it starts (in background), get the news and display them is a small window in the lower-right corner of the screen:



<u>REMARK</u>: The end user can enable/disable the RSS reader and change URLs (if you allowed it) from the screensaver "configure" dialog box.

Step 5 - Customize icon and dialog box image

A screensaver is a program). Therefore, it contain an icon. This icon is used to display it in Windows Explorer or when you create a Shortcut to it in the Desktop for example. A standard icon is used but it's now possible to customize it.

Also, your screensaver contains a "Customize" dialog box. You can customize the illustration image that is included in this window.

What is an icon?

See **Step 2** for more information on icons.

Customize the screensaver icon

1. The Step 5 dialog box looks like this:

| | Screensaver Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a cu the "Configure" dialog and a custom icon in the SCR | ustom image in file. |
|-----|--|-------------------------|
| | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box:] | |
| | c:\axialis\ax.screensaver.c | |
| | Recommended image size is 400 r 30 points. Only BMPO, IPECI and PRVS formats are topported. Uge a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file: | |
| i i | et/fauxs-26.ico | |
| D | Custom kores must only and assaulty obtains the following image formats: - NGL 256 colors - 32-32, XP format - 32-32, XS6 colors - 42-32, XP format - 43-46, 255 colors - 45-76, XP format | |

- 2. Click on the option Use a custom icon for the screensaver SCR file to activate it (2). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **3.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your ICO file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 4. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the icon image in the window on right.
- **5.** If this is the right icon, click **Next**. If the icon has the correct format (see specs above), you can continue the compilation wizard.

Customize the screensaver image

The screensaver that you'll create will contain a Customize dialog box. The application permits you to customize the illustration image that is included in this window ($\mathbf{0}$):



What kind of images can I use to customize my screensaver?

To be compatible with the customization feature, the image file must have the JPEG, BMP or PNG format. We recommend you to use an image with the following dimension: Width = 400, Height = 90.

How to create my illustration image?

Create this image using an external application like <u>Photoshop®</u> (professional tool), <u>Paint Shop Pro®</u> (shareware tool) or <u>Gimp®</u> (free tool).

1. The Step 3 dialog box looks like this:

| | Screensaver Customization You can customize your screen saver by adding a custom image in the "Configure" dalog and a custom icon in the SCR file. |
|-----|---|
| | Use a custom image in Configure dialog box:) |
| | Critandalstax screensaver () |
| a l | e:\fauxs-26.ico |
| 9 | Custom loops must only and assarily costain the following image formats: - Vicils, 256 colors - 16:016. WF format 12:032, 256 colors - 16:016. WF format display, 756 colors - 40:048 WF format |

- **2.** Click on the option **Use a custom image in Configure dialog box** to activate it (**1**). The edit fields below are automatically enabled.
- **3.** In the edit zone, enter the **full path** to your image file on your disk or click the [...] button to browse your disks and locate the file using a standard Windows dialog box.
- 4. Once the pathname has been entered you see a preview of the image in the window on right.
- 5. If this is the right image, click Next. You can continue the compilation wizard.

Step 6 - Specify the splash screen parameters

When you the Screen Saver starts, it displays a splash screen during a few seconds. By default, it displays a text splash screen with the information of the previous screen. But you can specify a custom image (BMP, JPEG, PNG) to replace the default screen.

The Step 6 dialog box looks like this:

| compile an Ins | tallable Screen Saver | - Step 6 of 9 | ? X |
|----------------|---|--|---|
| | Splash Scre | en | |
| | When the Screen Sav seconds. By default it information from the image (BMP, JPEG, Pf | er starts, it displays a splash scre displays a text splash screen wit previous screen, but you can spe VG) to replace the text | een for a few h the cify a custom |
| | 🚽 😑 No Splash Screen | | |
| | Display a Text Sp | lash Screen | |
| | 😁 Display an Image | based Splash Screen: | |
| | | 1 prove | |
| a l | | Display Time | 10 |
| | | | |
| | | 2 56 | conds |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| avialis | | Neuton | ancel |
| South Mar | ELEANOR | () (| ancer |

The Splash Screen Parameters

- **1.** If you don't want a splash screen, select **No Splash Screen** option (**0**).
- 2. If you select the **Display a Text Splash Screen** option (**1**), a standard window will display the screen saver Title and the Copyright text.
- 3. If you want to display a custom splash screen based on an image, select the **Display an Image Based Splash Screen** option (**1**). In the **Pathname** area, specify the full pathname (name and location) of the desired splash bitmap. Supported file formats are BMP, JPEG and PNG. The image size must be smaller than 640x480. You can click the "..." button to browse your disks using a standard Windows dialog box. When done, the **Preview** area displays a small picture of the selected bitmap file.
- 4. In the **Display Time** area (2), specify the display delay of the splash screen in seconds.
- 5. When done, Click Next button.

Step 7 - Specify the preview parameters

When the user selects a screensaver in Control Panel, it appears in a small preview window.

By default, a reduced animated preview is displayed but you can also specify a custom or a standard static image. The Step 7 dialog box looks like this:

| Preview Wi | ndow | |
|--|---|--|
| When the user select: appears in a small pre preview is displayed b standard static image | a screensaver in Windows Cont view window. By default, a reduc you can also specify a custom | rol Panel, it red anime of |
| Animated Preview | (real preview of the screen save | r) |
| No Preview - Defa | ult Image | |
| No Preview - Cust | om Static Image (BMP, JPEG, PM | G): |
| | | (-) |
| | Displaying an an preview is not re with Video scree (final user may o bechnical issues) | imated commended nsavers operence |
| | Image recomma | nded |

Specify an Animated Preview

- 1. If you want to display a standard Animated Preview Window (small sprites, flash, video), choose the Animated Preview option (1).
- 2. When the user will select the screen saver in the Windows Control Panel, it will display a small moving preview of the screensaver. When done, click **Next**.

IMPORTANT: We DO NOT recommend using a classic animated preview for **Video** based screensavers (especially for large video files). Some Windows versions/configurations may cause the screensaver preview to crash under special circumstances.

Specify a Static Preview Image

If you don't want the animated preview, you can choose to display a static image. Two options are available for the static image:

- 1. Select No Preview Default Image if you don't want to design an image by yourself. In this case, the application will display a default image (a computer screen displaying a screen saver).
- 2. Select No Preview Custom Static Image if you want to specify an image you've designed using an external drawing program. Only BMP, PNG or JPEG files are supported for preview images. If you choose this option you must specify an image file in the area below. You can click the "..." button to browse your disks using a standard Windows dialog box. For better results, we recommend you to resize the image to 152 x 112.
- 3. When done, click Next.

IMPORTANT: We STRONGLY recommend static preview image for **Video** based screensavers (especially for large video files). Some Windows versions/configurations may cause the screensaver preview to crash under special circumstances.

Step 8 - Specify an activation code (create a limited version)

Using this feature, you'll be able to create a limited version of your screensaver. The will user will be able to test the screensaver before buying it (a.k.a. shareware version). One he purchased it, the user receives an activation code to unlock it. The codes will be generated by you using the two ID numbers. Click <u>here</u> to read more about activation codes.



If you want to create a demo/limited version of your screensaver, check the Use an Activation Code box (①) and follow the procedure below. If you want to create a fully working version of your screensaver, be sure to uncheck this option (①) and click on the Next button and jump directly to step 8.

Specify the Activation Code Properties

If you check Use an Activation Code, you'll create a demo/limited version of the screensaver. The enduser will have to enter an Activation Code to unlock it. You'll be able to generate Activation Codes using a built-in feature after the compilation (Alt+F6). Click <u>here</u> to read more about activation codes.

- 2. In the Screen Saver ID area (2), specify the Screen Saver ID (an 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits) that will be used to generate the Activation Codes. Two Ids are used to generate the codes: The Screen Saver ID (which is different for each library you compiled) and the Company ID (which is constant but differs for another company). This number is proposed but you can modify it (recommended).
- 3. In the **Company ID** area (2), specify the Company ID (another 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits) that will be used to generate the Activation Codes. This number is proposed but you can modify it (recommended). However, if you modify it, we recommend you to keep the same Company ID for all the screensavers you'll compile.

Remarks on IDs:

Each digit in a hexadecimal number is coded from 0 to 9 and A to F (A=10 &ldots; F=15). This is a typical computer notation.

These numbers are just proposal based on several Screen Saver and Company properties. You can freely modify and customize them (recommended). If you customize these numbers, do not enter a 'simplistic' one.

Don't loose these numbers! You'll need it to generate the Activations Codes later (using the built-in feature, after the compilation - Alt+F6).

4. If you activate **Code based on User Name** option (3), the end-user will have to enter his name along with the activation codes. This option is more secure but forces you to generate one Code per user. If you don't activate this option, the screen saver activation will use a standard serial Activation Code. Click <u>here</u> to read more about activation codes.

Specify the Screen Saver Limitations

Now you have to specify the type of limitation you wish to implement in your screen saver. Two kind of limitation are available: a time limitation (screensaver with trial period) or an object/images limitation (only a part of the screensaver is displayed).

- 5. If the "Expiration Date" option is chosen (④), the application will generate a screen saver which contains all features (all sprites and slides) but which is time limited. After a trial period (# of days can be specified in the edit zone below), the screen saver will freeze and the user will be prompted to activate it.
- 6. If the "Limited Number of Sprites/Slides" option is chosen (5), the application will generate a screen saver which displays only a limited number of sprites or slides (# of objects can be specified in the edit zone below). The screen saver is NOT time limited and will never expire. After activation, all the objects are displayed.

<u>REMARK</u>: Only the Expiration Date system is available for Flash, Video and FLI/FLC based screensavers.

Specify Advanced Parameters

Some advanced parameters permits you to fully customize the trial version of your screensaver. To access these parameters, click the Advanced button (6).

- 7. In the Version Name zone, specify the name of the limited version. Usually: 'Shareware Version', 'Trial Edition', 'Demo Version'...
- 8. In the Registration URL zone, specify the Web Address of your purchase web page (for example: http://www.axialis.com/purchase). This Web Address will be used in the 'Properties' dialog box as a real hyperlink (the user will be able to click on it to register).
- 9. In the Registration Text zone, specify the Registration Text. This text will be displayed in the upper-left corner of the limited version of the screensaver. Once the screensaver is activated, this text is hidden. Since the user can activate the screensaver using the A key and register using the R key, adding a reminder in this text is a good idea: "Press 'A' to enter your activation code. Press 'R' to register". This text can be localized.

Information about Localization

The text can be localized using macros (placed in the text body) that permit you to define conditional portions. A conditional portion begins with #if and ends with a #endif. If a text line is not in a conditional portion, it is always displayed. Example:

```
#if ENGLISH
... Text using english language ...
#endif
... Text always displayed ...
#if FRENCH
... Text using french language ...
#endif
```

Actually, 8 language macros are supported: ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, SPANISH, DUTCH, ITALIAN, PORTUGUESE and RUSSIAN.

- 10. In the Registration Text zone, specify the Expiration Text. This text will be displayed in the upper-left corner of the screen if the trial period is over. Once the screensaver is activated, this text is hidden. Since the user can activate the screensaver using the A key and register using the R key, adding a reminder in this text is a good idea: "Press 'A' to enter your activation code. Press 'R' to register". This text can be localized.
- **11.** If the **"Enter Activation Code During Installation"** box is checked, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code (and eventually his name) during the installation of the screensaver. You can configure this option as a proposal or an obligation by choosing an option below.
 - If the "**Propose To Enter Code**" option is chosen, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code during install but will be able to bypass this step. He will be able to activate it later during use. In this case, this step is a proposal, NOT an obligation.
 - If the **"Force To Enter Code"** option is chosen, the user will be prompted to enter his activation code to proceed with installation. In this case, this step is an obligation, NOT a proposal.

Step 9 - Compilation Summary

This dialog box summarizes all the parameters of the compilation. We recommend you to read this summary carefully before proceeding.

Compilation Summary

- 1. Read the compilation summary.
- 2. Read carefully the note about copyright. Click the More Info About Copyright button:
- 3. When you're ready to go, click the Go and Compile! button.

Compilation

This dialog box displays the compilation process running. You can stop the compilation at any time.

Compilation Process

1. A dialog box opens in which you see the compilation in progress (a few seconds). If a problem occurs during the compilation, you see an error message. If it worked fine, the following screen is displayed:

| Compile an Install | able Screen Saver - Compilation | ? X |
|--------------------|--|-----|
| | Compilation | |
| 07 | Axialis Screen Saver Producer is compling your project | |
| | Compiling SCR file, Compressing images | |
| | V Compressing SCR file | |
| | Creating EXE Installation Package | |
| | Verifying Package Files | |
| | Compilation Successfully Completed. | .0 |
| D | last the Installation Perlage Struct | |
| maxialis | Clo | se |

- You can test the installation package now. Click on the Test the Installation Package Now button (1). The install procedure starts, just follow it. It will install the screensaver on your computer. This is exactly whet the end user will do.
- 3. Click Close to finish.

Command-line options

If you've created an installation package for your screensaver, many command-line options are available to configure the install procedure. Options are specified after the EXE filename in the execution command-line.

All the command-line options

The Screensaver Installer command-line syntax includes the following options:

| Option | Parameters | Definition |
|------------|------------|--|
| /? or /h | | Help - Displays a help screen. |
| /q | | Quiet Mode - Installs the screensaver quietly without user interface. If the installation failed the error code (ERRORLEVEL) returned by the install is 1. If it is successful, the returned value is 0. |
| /f | | Display the Progress and Final Screens - In quiet mode, displays the progress and the final notice screens to inform the user during the screensaver installation result. This option is ignored if the installation is not in quiet mode. |
| /d | [-] | Set as Default Screensaver - Set the installed screensaver as Windows® default screensaver. Specify "/d-" to clear the option. |
| /s | [-] | Create a Desktop Shortcut - Create a shortcut icon on the Windows® Desktop (to easily launch and test the screensaver). Specify "/s-" to clear the option. |
| / m | [-] | Create a Start Menu Entry - Creates an entry in the Windows® Start Menu (to easily launch the screensaver). Specify "/ m -" to clear the option. |
| /p | [-] | Open Display Properties - Automatically open the Windows® display properties dialog box (to select and adjust the screensaver configuration). Specify "/ p -" to clear the option. |
| /u | | Uninstall the Screensaver - Automatically uninstall the screensaver. |
| /x | | Windows® XP User Interface - Forces the installation to use a XP-like user interface. |
| /w | | Windows® ME/2000 User Interface - Forces the installation to use a standard ME/2000 user interface. |

Command-line examples

1. Automatically un-install the screensaver:

Install /u

2. Install the screensaver in quiet mode, set the screensaver as default Windows® screensaver and do NOT create a desktop shortcut icon:

Install /q /d /s-

3. Install the screensaver in quiet mode, display a progress dialog box and force use of the Windows® ME/2000 standard interface :

Install /w /q /f

Working with the Photoshop® plug-in

<u>Adobe Photoshop</u>® is actually the industry standard in image creation. That's why we made a Photoshop® plug-in that will permit you to transfer your images directly to Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer without creating temporary PSD image files. This great feature will permit you to work efficiently and create high quality screensavers.

Why a Photoshop® Plug-in?

A plug-in is a program extension module. In fact, this is a small a program which is "plugged" (added) into another application to enhance it or add a new feature to it. The plug-in must be compatible with the "parent" application specifications.

Adobe® created a powerful plug-in interface for Photoshop®. This plug-in model is now a widely used standard in the graphical industry. As a result, a Photoshop® compatible plug-in can also be used with various other graphical applications (Illustrator®, Paint Shop Pro®...).

Why a Photoshop® plug-in for Professional Screen Saver Producer?

We created such a plug-in to permit you to transfer an image or a drawing directly from Photoshop® (or any plug-in compatible application) to Professional Screen Saver Producer through the memory.

This is much more fast and secure. No more temporary PSD or PNG file to transfer your image into the application. No more risk to loose your file while transferring it.

Before using this plug-in you have to install it in the Photoshop plug-ins directory.

Install the Photoshop® Plug-in

Using the Photoshop to IconWorkshop plug-in, you'll be able to transfer an image or a drawing directly from Photoshop® (or any plug-in compatible application) to Professional Screen Saver Producer through the memory.

Install the Photoshop® plug-in

- 1. Before installing the plug-in we recommend you to close the Photoshop® application (if it is actually opened in background). Choose File/Install Photoshop® Plug-in...
- 2. The dialog box Install the Photoshop Transfer Plug-in opens (see below). In the Location edit zone (1), specify the Photoshop plug-in folder. If you don't know the exact folder path, click the browse button (2) to choose the folder in a list.

| 0 | | | | | |
|--------|---|--|---|--|------------------------|
| RS | Axialis Profe permit you t without usin | issional Screen to transfer ima ig a temporary | Saver Producer includes a ges directly from Adobe Ph PSD file. See help for more | powerful feature otoshop@ throug : info. | which will h memory |
| \sim | In order to Adobe Phot | activate this fe oshop® plug-ir | ature, you have to install a h directory. | an Axialis module i | n your |
| | The a the A (If Photocho location by I | ion suggests y p@ is installed syping it or bro | ou to install the plug-in at t on your computer). You ca wsing your disks: | he location specif in specify an alter | ied b 2 nate |
| | Location: | C:\Program | Files\Adobe\Photoshop 7.0 | NPlug-Ins | - |
| 0 | - | 🖌 🗹 Install the | plug-in file in a sub-folder | "Axialis" | |
| • | 1 This pl compa Adobe | ug-in can be used tible with Photos Ellustrator®). 1 | I with various paint applications hop⊚plug-ins (Jasc Paint Shop See help for more info. | . These programs m Pro@, Adobe Eleme | ust be ints®, |
| axia | is | | ത്രത്തിം | Capi | e |

- 3. If you want to **create a subfolder** "Axialis" to install the plug-in module (recommended to organize your folder properly), activate the option "Install in a subfolder Axialis" (3). Note that creating a subfolder may fail with some compatible applications.
- 4. Click OK. When done, a message informs you that the plug-in has been installed.
- 5. Now you can start your Photoshop® application. The plug-in is visible in Filter/Axialis/Transfer To Professional Screen Saver Producer menu. <u>Read this</u> for more info on how to use the plug-in filter.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can install the Plug-in in various other compatible applications. See your application help file for more info on how to proceed.

If Photoshop® is installed on your computer, the plug-in folder will be automatically added to the edit zone. Also, you'll be prompted to install the plug-in the first time you'll launch Professional Screen Saver Producer.

Use the Photoshop® Plug-in

To use the Photoshop® to Professional Screen Saver Producer plug-in, you must start the Photoshop® application first. The plug-in is accessible from within Photoshop® only.

Use the Photoshop® plug-in

- 1. First launch Photoshop® and open or create an image file. You don't need to launch Professional Screen Saver Producer before using the plug-in. It will be automatically launched by the plug-in if necessary.
- 2. Select the layer and the portion of the image you want to transfer to Professional Screen Saver Producer (1). If you don't create a selection area, the whole layer image will be transferred. Only rectangular selections are supported for transfer.



- **3.** Choose the **Filter/Axialis/Transfer to Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer...** command in the menu.
- 4. Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer is automatically launched (or activated if running in background) and the dialog box Image Transfer from Photoshop® opens (see below).

| Image Trans | sfer From Adobe Photoshop - Options | ? × |
|-------------|--|-----------------------------|
| FA | You are about to transfer an image from Adobe Photos compatible application) to Avialis Professional Screen Sa | nop® (or a wer Producer. |
| a fr | How do you want to use this image? | |
| | 🚺 🖷 Create a new Image Document | |
| | A new document containing this image will be created. | |
| | 2 🥘 Create a New Screen Saver using this image as sp | rite |
| | A sprite based screen saver project will be created from t (the image will be the first sprite added to the project). | his image |
| | 3 😑 Paste the image in the current Screen Saver proje | ct |
| | The image will be pasted in the current screen saver proj- (just like using the Clipboard). | ect window |
| | Do not prompt in the future (first option by default) | |
| in axia | § | Cancel |

- 3. The image is about to be transferred in IconWorkshop. You can choose one of the following operations: Create a New Image Document (1): The application creates a new document containing the image. You'll be able to perform various operations on the image (resize, crop, save...); Create a New Screen Saver using this image as sprite (2): The application will create a new sprite based screen saver. The transferred image will be used to create the first sprite. The alpha channel will be preserved during the transfer; Paste the Image in the Current Screen Saver project (3): This option is enabled only if a screensaver document is already opened in the application. It pastes the image in the current editor area (just like the Clipboard paste operation).
- 4. If you choose the 2nd option (Create a New Screen Saver using this image as sprite), the Create a New Screen Saver Project dialog box opens (see below).

| | Screen Saver Information | |
|------|--|--|
| | You can specify Screen Saver and Author information below: | |
| 1 | Screen Saver | |
| | Ite: | |
| | Project1 | |
| | Description : | |
| P | This is my Screen Saver | |
| F.F. | Author | |
| 10 | Name: | |
| 1 | Marc EMILE | |
| | Gopyright: | |
| | ©2003 Axialis Software | |
| | | |

- 5. In the Screen Saver group (1), enter the title and the description of the new project.
- 6. In the Author group (2) specify your personal data. Click Next.
- **7.** A new screensaver document is created and the transferred image has been placed at the center of the project as a sprite.

Generate Activation Codes

With Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer you can create shareware versions of your screensavers. It means that these versions can be used for a limited period of time by a user for test purpose. When this period is over the user has to purchase it or un-install it.

When the user purchases the screensaver, you just have to send him an activation code (that you've generated with this program too) to transform the trial version in a fully working version. You'll be able to generate Activation Codes using this feature.

Information on Activation Codes

Two kinds of Activation Codes have been implemented in Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer.



Axialis Activation Code Generation System

Activation Codes Based on the User Name

The user has to enter **his name <u>and</u> his activation code** using this format: 1234-1234-1234-1234 (4 groups of 4 digits).

- Pro: The user has to provide his name if he wants to publish the code.
- Con: The author has to manually generate a code for each user.

Activation Codes Based on a Serial Number

The user just enters a longer activation code using this format: 123456-1234-1234-1234-1234

- **Pro**: The author can automatically generate a list of codes.
- **Con**: The user can anonymously publish his code.

Generate Activation Codes

With this feature, you can generate Activation Codes for previously compiled Screen Savers. You can generate two kinds of Activation Codes: Based on User Name (one code generated for each user) or in serial (a list of codes ban be generated).

You can generate activation codes at any time. You don't need to open a screen saver project to generate codes. You just need the Company ID and the Screen Saver ID you used during the compilation. To open the Generate Activation Codes dialog box, choose Edit / Generate Activation Codes or press Alt+F6. The following dialog box opens:

| Constant | Activation Code | es for compiled S | creen Savers | <i>?</i>) |
|-------------------------------|---|--|---|----------------------|
| Gener | ate Activat | ion Codes | | |
| Using this fe To create se | sature you can gener erial codes, you need | ate Activation Codes f the Company ID and | or previously compiled Screen Sav Screen Saver ID you used during o | erss. complation. |
| You can ger each user) | or in Serial (a list of c | ctivation Codes: Based odes can be generated | f on User Name (one code general), See Help for more info. | ted for |
| - | Company and | Screen Saver | | |
| 200 | Screen Saver ID: | 676F50E3 0 | below to select them in a list: | ised, click |
| LA: VINCE | Company ID: | FFE77CFC 🙆 | Get IDs 1 6 history file. | - |
| | Generate an A | ctivation Code ba an Activation Code based user below then slick "Gen | sed on a User Name on the User Name during compliation, a erate" (automatically copied in Clipboar Code: | specify the d). |
| | John Smith | @ n (5 2~> | 2791-9501-4120-4028 | 3 |
| | Generate a Lis | t of Activation Co Of choose a usemane bac on then click generate to s | ides in Serial ed Activation Code, please specify a ra ave the result in a text file, | inge of |
| 1921.21 | From Number: | 10 Number: | Constate to File 🙆 | |
| | Serial Activat | ion Codes can be generate | d from 000001 to 999999. | |
| | | | | |

Company and Screen Saver IDs

Two Ids are used to generate the codes: The <u>Screen Saver ID</u> (which is different for each screen saver you compiled) and the <u>Company ID</u> (which is constant but differs for another company). You must specify <u>the same number</u> you specified when you compiled the Screen Saver.

- 1. In the **Screen Saver ID** area (**1**), specify the ID of your screensaver (an 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits) that will be used to generate the Activation Codes.
- 2. In the **Company ID** area (2), specify the ID of your company (also an 8 digit hexadecimal number 32 bits).
- 3. Click the **Get IDs from history file** button (3) if you can't recall the Screen Saver ID and/or the Company ID you used when you compiled the Screen Saver. This will open a window and display a history list of the compilations you made.

<u>REMARKS</u>: Each digit in a hexadecimal number is coded from 0 to 9 and A to F (A=10 & Idots; F=15). This is a typical computer notation.

If you can't recall the Screen Saver ID or company ID you specified at compilation, click the button on right side of this edit zone to choose this it in a history list.

Generate an Activation Code based on a User Name

If you choose an Activation Code based on the User Name during Compilation, specify the name of the User and Click the Generate button.

1. In the **User Name** area (④), specify the name of the user for who you want to generate an Activation Code. This name must have at least 6 letters. The activation code will be displayed in the edit zone on right and copied in the clipboard as in this example:

Your User Name : John Smith Your Activation Code : 1527-9872-0984-6717

- 2. Click the **Generate** Button (**S**). It will generate an Activation Code based on the User Name you specified on left. The activation code will be displayed in the edit zone on right and copied in the clipboard.
- 3. In the **Code** area (**6**) displays the resulting Activation Code (based on the user name specified on left).

<u>REMARK</u>: You don't need to copy this code in the clipboard. A special string has already been created and copied in the clipboard when you clicked on the "**Generate**" button

Generate a List of Activation Codes in Serial

If you don't choose a Username based Activation Code, you can specify a range of code generation then click generate to save result in a text file.

1. In the **From Number** to **To Number** areas (**?**), specify the range of Activation Codes you whish to generate.

<u>REMARK</u>: Using this feature you can automatically generate a list of activation codes. These codes will not be based on the Username. They will be indexed using a 6 digit number (thus, codes can be generated from 000001 to 999999). In these 2 fields, you can specify the lower and the upper bounds. When done, click on the button placed on right to create a list of codes and save it in a text file.

2. Click on the **Generate file** button (⁽³⁾), it will generate a list of codes and save it in a text file. Don't forget to specify the generation range (fields on left) before proceeding.

CHAPTER 5

Working With the Axialis Librarian

In this chapter

- What is the Librarian? \blacksquare
- Configure the Librarian \blacksquare
- Working with the librarian $\ \blacksquare$
- Add Items to the librarian

What is the Librarian?

The application contains a powerful built-in Librarian that permits you to efficiently manage your media files as well as your screensaver project files. The Librarian is a docked window (integrated in the user-interface).

In the figure below, the librarian is located on the left side of the application. Using the upper part of the librarian window, you can browse the folders included in it $(\mathbf{0})$. The files included in this folder are displayed below $(\mathbf{2})$.

Using this Librarian you can organize your files like a file explorer. However, the librarian shows only media (images, sounds, video, Flash...) and working files (screensaver projects SSP, sprites SSS). One of the most useful feature is the ability to use mouse Drag & Drops to add files to your projects. For example, in the figure below, we add the Axialis Software Logo sprite from the Librarian to the opened project using drag & drop (③):



Files and folders included in the Librarian are located on your disk drive. This location is set by default (the first time you installed the application) in your "My Documents" folder. A sub-folder is created and is named "Axialis Librarian". You can change this folder and location (see below).

Change the Librarian folder location

- 1. Select View/Preferences or press F2.
- **2.** A dialog box opens. Select the **Librarian** tab. You can change the Librarian folder in the **Path** field. You can also use the Browse button to choose a location using a browse dialog box.
- 3. Click OK when done.
- **4.** Now **quit** the application and **transfer** your files from the old location to the new one (the application does not perform this operation).
- 5. Restart the application.

Show/hide the Librarian

- 1. Select View/Librarian or press ESC.
- **2.** By hiding the **Librarian**, you gain some space in your application work area. The opened windows are automatically rearranged.

Change the Librarian position on screen

- 1. Using the left mouse button, click on the Librarian window title and keep the button pressed.
- 2. Move the mouse over the right or bottom side of the application window and release the button.
- **3.** The Librarian window location has changed. This new location will be saved (even if you quit and restart the application).

Configure the Librarian

Show and hide the Librarian Window

The Librarian is a docked window (integrated in the user-interface). It can be easily shown and hidden.

Show/hide the Librarian

- 1. Select View/Librarian or press ESC.
- **2.** By hiding the **Librarian**, you gain some space in your application work area. The opened windows are automatically rearranged.

Change the Librarian position on screen

The Librarian is a docked window (integrated in the user-interface). Its location can be easily changed.

Change the Librarian position on screen

- 1. Using the left mouse button, click on the Librarian window title and keep the button pressed.
- 2. Move the mouse over the right or bottom side of the application window and release the button.
- **3.** The Librarian window location has changed. This new location will be saved (even if you quit and restart the application).

Change the Librarian folder location

Files and folders included in the Librarian are located on your disk drive. This location is set by default (the first time you installed the application) in your "My Documents" folder. A sub-folder is created and is named "Axialis Librarian". You can change this folder and location (see below).

Change the Librarian folder location

- 1. Select View/Preferences or press F2.
- **2.** A dialog box opens. Select the **Librarian** tab. You can change the Librarian folder in the **Path** field. You can also use the Browse button to choose a location using a browse dialog box.
- 3. Click OK when done.
- 4. Now **quit** the application and **transfer** your files from the old location to the new one (the application does not perform this operation). **Restart** the application.

Working with the Librarian

Open an item in the librarian

- 1. Go to the librarian.
- 2. Select the folder or item.
- 3. Choose Librarian/Open item.

<u>REMARK</u>: If you have chosen a folder, its contents is displayed. If you have chosen a media file (Animation, Image, Sound, Video...) or a Screen Saver projects (SSP), the file will be displayed in a document window.

Open an item full screen

- 1. Go to the librarian.
- 2. Select the icon image.
- 3. Choose Librarian/Open item Full screen.

Edit an item with an External program

- 1. Select an item.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Edit item.
- **3.** If you have not specified the pathname of an external editor, the application asks you to specify it. Click on **Yes**.
- **4.** The **"Preferences**" dialog box opens. Specifies the list of supported media files. You can select one or more files to perform an action ('Change Editor' for example). To associate a media file type to the application just check the associated box within this list. To restore the original media file association, uncheck this box.
- 5. Click on the All button to select all the Media files in the list
- 6. Click on the Associate/Restore button to restore the original association of the selected media files.
- 7. In the **Media Type Details**, the selected extensions are displayed and are associated with the chosen program.
- 8. Click to Change icon to change the folder icon associated with the program.
- 9. Click to change the default Player/Viewer application for the selected media file types. This application will be launched when you'll choose the Open command in Windows explorer.

10. Click **to change the default Editor** application for the selected media file types. This external application will be launched when you'll choose the Edit command in Windows or the application explorers.

Toggle the auto full screen option

1. Activate the command Librarian/Auto Full Screen.

NOTE: When you open an item, it will be automatically displayed in full screen window.

Rename one or more items

- **1.** Select one or more items.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Rename.
- **3.** If you have selected one item, enter in the edit zone, the new name of the item.
- 4. If you have selected several icons, the dialog box "Rename several media items" opens.
- 5. Enter the name of the item. The items will be automatically indexed. For example, "Image" will rename "Image1", "Image2",..."ImageN".
- 6. If you select the "Add zero characters in index" check box, the items will be indexed differently. For example, "Image" will rename "Image001", "Image002",..."Image00n".

Send media items via email

- 1. Select one or more items.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Send as email.
- 3. The dialog box "Send Media Items" opens.
- **4.** In the **To**, specifies the list of recipients. You can specify several recipients by separating email addresses with a semicolon (;) or click to select the recipients directly from your Address Book. This feature is implemented only if you use Microsoft Outlook® address book
- 5. In the Subject area, enter description for the selected items attached as an Internet email.
- 6. In the Message area, enter a message for the selected items attached as an Internet email.
- 7. Click on the Send button

Search items

- 1. Choose Librarian/Search.
- 2. The dialog box "Search Media Files in the Librarian" opens.
- **3.** In the **Type** area, choose the type of Items to find (All types, Screen Saver Projects, Images, Animations, Videos Clips or Sounds Music, Icons, Cursors, Web)

- 4. In the Name area, enter a search criterion for the item's filename (blank=no search on name). Wildcards are needed to perform multi-files search. For example, to get all the PNG files with "B" as the first letter, enter "b*.PNG".
- 5. In the Author area, enter a search criterion for the item's author (blank=no search on author). Do not use wildcards. For example, to find the files made by John Smith, you can just enter "smith".
- 6. In the **Keyword** area, enter a search criterion for the item's keywords (blank=no search on keywords). Do not use wildcards. For example, to find the files that have the 'ball' keyword, just enter "ball". Enter the **Name**, the **Author**, the **Keyword** and the **Description** of the item.
- 7. In the **Description** area, enter a search criterion for the item's description (blank=no search on description). Do not use wildcards. For example, to find the files that contain the word 'rock' in the description, just enter "rock".

NOTE: The "Name" is the name of file, "Author", "Keyword" and "Description" are fields that you can enter in the dialog box **Librarian/Properties/Description**. You can specify only one criteria per field. Blank fields will be ignored. Search is not case sensitive

- 8. Each time you launch the "Search" command, the application will create a "Found Media Files" document window.
- 9. You can work in each "Found Media Files" document window.

Delete items

- 1. Select items from the librarian.
- 2. Choose Edit/Delete.
- 3. An information dialog box prompts you. Click OK.

NOTE: The selected files or folders are moved to the "Deleted Items" special folder. You can restore them back to their original locations at any time or you can also permanently deleted them.

Preview an item in the librarian

- 1. Select one or more items in the librarian.
- 2. Activate Librarian/Preview.
- 3. The item is displayed in the thumbnail.

<u>NOTES</u>: The option **Preview** is only available if you activate the command **Librarian/Display/Large icons**. Only pictures can be previewed in thumbnails

Restore previously deleted items in the Librarian

- 1. Go to the folder "Deleted items" from the librarian.
- 2. Select one or more items.
- 3. Right click and choose Restore or Double click or Return on the item(s).
- 4. The dialog box "Restore deleted items" opens. You can restore the selected items back to their original locations. Click YES.

Empty the Deleted Items folder

- 1. Right click and choose Empty Folder.
- 2. The dialog box Empty folder "Deleted items" opens.
- 3. If you are sure to permanently delete all the items, click YES.

WARNING: You will not be able to UNDO this operation.

Create a new folder

- 1. Go to the librarian.
- 2. Select the folder where you wish create a new folder.
- 3. Choose Librarian/New Folder and Enter the name of the folder.

To go to the Parent Folder

1. Choose Librarian/Parent Folder.

This command permits you to return to the parent folder.

Import files

- 1. Select the folder where you're going to import the files.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Import.
- 3. Select the file type from the File Type Drop Down box.
 - Video Animations

 (*.AVI;*.ASF;*.MOV;*.QT;*.MPG;*.MPEG;*.RM;*.RT;*.RAM;*.WMV; *.FLI;*.FLC,
 *.SWF),
 - Images Files

 (*.BMP;*.DIB;*.RLE;*.GIF;*.JPG;*.JPE;*.JPEG;*.PICT;*.FPX;*.FPIX;*.PIC;*.QTI;*.QT
 IF;*.PSD;*.PCT;*.PCD;*.WMF;*.PNG;*.PCX;*.RLE;*.TGA;*.TIF;*.TIFF;*.LBM;*.IFF),
 - **Sound Files** (*.MP3;*.MP2;*.WAV;*.MID;*.MIDI;*.MOD;*.S3M;*.XM;*.RA;*.SMI;*.SND;*.SAU;*.A IF;*.AIFC;*.AIFF;*.WM;*.WMA;*.RMI).

- Icons files (*.ICO;*.ICL).
- Cursor files (*.CUR; *.ANI; *.ACL).
- Screen Saver Producer Files (*.SSP).
- Web files (*.HTM;*.HTML;*.HTX;*.ASP;*.ALX;*.STM;*.SHTML;*.SHTM;*.DHTML).
- **4.** Click on the file that you want to select in the Contents List box and click on the **Open** button. The imported files will be automatically placed in the librarian.

Export files

- 1. Select one or several items to export.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Export. The dialog box "Browse folder" opens.
- 3. Choose the destination folder for the selected item.

Select files

- 1. Select the Folder in the librarian.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Select Files.
- 3. You can choose one of these options:
 - Select (Num+): You can add file type to the selection. The dialog box "Expand Selection" opens. Specify file type to add to the selection. For example *.JPG. If you select the "Replace the current selection" check box, the application unselects all files already selected and selects files with the current selection.
 - Unselect (Num -): You can remove file type from the selection. The dialog box "Shrink Selection" opens. Specify file type to remove from the current selection. For example "*.JPEG". The application unselects all files already selected.
 - Select all (Ctrl Num +): You select all the items in the selected folder.
 - Unselect all (Ctrl Num -): You clear all the items in the selected folder.
 - Invert selection (Num *): You invert the selection in the selected folder.

To select all items in the folder

1. Choose Librarian/Select all items.

Change the item display

- 1. Choose Librarian/Display and click on Large icons, Small icons, Lists or Details.
- 2. You can also sort the items by Name, Size, Date, Size, Ascending or Descending.
- **3.** You can activate the command **Librarian/Display/Auto Preview**. This option will allow you to display an image preview for all items but it is CPU time consuming. If you have not selected this option, you'll have to manually preview each selected item by selecting the command **Librarian/Preview**.

NOTES:

If you choose **Large icons**, all items will be displayed by using large icons with preview, Filename, File Size, Dimensions and File format.

If you choose **Small icons**, all items will be displayed by using small icons without preview but with the filename.

If you choose List, all items will be displayed in a list.

If you choose **Details**, the application displays information about each itm in the window.

Print the actual folder

1. Choose Librarian/Print

- 2. In the group Selection, you can select Print all items or Print Selected items in the librarian, Explorer or search result window.
- 3. In the group Items size, choose the options:
 - Very Small (0.8 in.)
 - Small (1.6 in.)
 - Medium (2.4 in.)
 - Large (3.2 in.)

4. In the group Header and Footer, check the "Print Header & Footer Text" box. The Print Header and Footer text option allows to specify macros that will be automatically replaced by its related variable text at printing. A macro must be specified between brackets {}. Fill the different areas "Header and Footer" by using macros and/or static text

- PATHNAME}: Your username
- {DATE}: Actual print date
- TIME}: Actual print time
- {PAGE}: Page Number

Display a grid in the detailed list

If you have chosen the option "Librarian/Display/Details", you can show grid in report view.

1. Choose Librarian/Show Grid to toggle the option.

Show info tooltips

For each item, you can display an information tooltip.

1. Choose the option Librarian/Show Info Tooltips to toggle this feature. When you pass over an item, a tooltips displays. You can read the Filename, The File Type, Size/Colors, Date, Time and Size.

Display the item properties

- **1.** Select one or more items.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Properties.
- 3. The dialog box "Items Properties" opens.
- 4. In ITEM PROPERTIES tab, you can read the next information (Filename, Location, Last Modification, File Size, Format, Size/Colors, Memory used)
- 5. In **EXTENDED INFORMATION** tab, you can enter the Name, Author and Keywords in their areas.
- 6. In **DESCRIPTION** tab, you can enter the **Description** of the file in its area.
- 7. In **PREVIEW** tab, you can visualize an image preview.

These keywords "Filename, Author, Keywords and Description" will be used later to easily retrieve the item using the Find feature. You can select several items, open the "Properties" dialog box and specify the same keywords to all of them in one operation. Please insert a comma between keywords.

If you select more items, the **ITEM PROPERTIES** tab has been replaced by the **SELECTION** tab. You can read the item total number and the total size of the selected files. For Example:

- Items: 4 Items
- Total Size: 121.44 Kb (124 353 bytes)

If you select folders, the **Librarian/Properties** command opens the standard Windows Properties dialog box.

Change a folder icon

- 1. Select a folder in the librarian
- 2. Click right and choose the option "Change icon".
- 3. The dialog box "Change Folder icon" opens.
- **4.** In the area Icon file, enter the filename (.ICO, .ICL .EXE, ou .DLL) or click the button **Browser**. The icons list displays. Select the new icon.

NOTE: The new icon will be displayed in the Explorer Windows.

Show folders

1. Choose Librarian/Show Folders.

The application shows all folder items in the list.

Add Items to the Librarian

Add items to the librarian from the Explorer Document

- 1. Select a folder in the librarian where you want to add items.
- 2. Select one or more items in the Explorer Document.
- 3. Right click and choose Add to the librarian.

Add an opened document to the librarian

- 1. Select a folder in the librarian where you want to add Media Files.
- 2. Open a Document (Image, Sound, Video Clip, Screen Saver Project...) or activate an existing document window.
- 3. Right click and choose Add to the librarian.

Add items using the Import function

- 1. Select a folder in the librarian where you want to import items.
- 2. Choose Librarian/Import.
- **3.** The **Import in the Library** dialog box opens. Enter the filenames or select the files to import and click on the **Save** Button.

CHAPTER 6

Working With the Axialis Media File Explorer

In this chapter

- Using the Axialis Media File Explorer
 - Working with Media Files
 - Features Specific to Image Files ■

Using the Axialis Media File Explorer

The application contains a powerful **Axialis Media File Explorer** that permits you to browse your disks, locate media files, display them as thumbnail with preview, organize them and more...

Create a new Explorer window

- 1. Choose File/New/New Explorer or press CTRL+E.
- **2.** A new **Explorer** document window is created in the working area (**1**). You can open several Explorer windows.



- The Explorer window is divided in two parts. On the left pane you can see the Folder Tree (2). On the right pane, all the supported files present in the selected folder are listed in thumbnail view (3). The separator between the 2 panes can be moved using the mouse.
- Many functions are available. Most of them are accessible by clicking buttons in the local toolbar (^(a)).

Explorer Functions

Many of the Explorer functions are similar to those present in the Librarian. For that reason, we propose to you to jump to the related Librarian functions (see below).

- Explorer/Open
- Explorer/Edit
- <u>Explorer/Open Full Screen</u>
- <u>Explorer/Automatic Full Screen</u>
- Explorer/Preview
- Explorer/Rename
- Explorer/Send as email
- Explorer/File Selection
- Explorer/Show folders
- Explorer/Show grid
- Explorer/Show Info tooltips
- Display item or selection properties

Display the item properties

1. Select one or more items.

2. Choose Explorer/Properties. The command opens the Windows standard "Properties" dialog box.

Search media files on the computer

- 1. Choose Explorer/Search.
- 2. The dialog box "Search on the Computer" opens.
- **3.** In the **Named** area, enter a search criterion for the item's filename (blank=no search on name). Wildcards are needed to perform multi-files search. For example, to get all the PNG files with "B" as the first letter, enter "b*.PNG".
- 4. In the Look In area, enter a pathname (blank=no search on author).
- 5. If you check the option "Include Subfolders",
- **6.** In the **Type** area, enter a search criterion for the item's type (blank=no search on keywords). Do not use wildcards.
- 7. If you check the **Date** option, you can specify a range of date.
- 8. If you check the Size option, you can specify a file size criteria.

Browse media files full screen

One of the most useful feature of the Axialis Explorer is the ability to browse media files in full screen mode. Once a media file is opened full screen, you can easily display the next file in the folder staying in full screen mode. It works even if the media files have different types (e.g. Image -> Movie -> Music -> Flash...).

Open a media file full screen

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2.** Browse your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- **3. Select the files** you wish to browse full screen. If only one file is selected, you'll browse all the files.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

4. Choose the Explorer/Open Item Fullscreen (F11). The first selected file appears fullscreen.

Browse the files

5. You can browse your files by using the PgUp and PgDn keys:

- Press PgDn to go to the Next media file.
- Press **PgUp** to go to the previous media file.
- 6. Press ESC key to exit the fullscreen mode and return to the Explorer view.

Zoom in, zoom out, change display mode

- 7. While viewing a file fullscreen, you can zoom in or zoom out by pressing [+] or [-] keys.
- **8.** With **image files**, you can zoom using the **left/right mouse buttons**. **Move the mouse** to slide the image on screen (if larger than screen in zoom mode for example). You can also use the arrow keys. A double-click quits the fullscreen mode.
- **9.** Three display modes are available (scale, best fit, stretched). You can change the mode by pressing the **Tab** key.

Print a folder content as thumbnail with preview

It may be useful to print a folder content in thumbnail preview.

Print a folder content as thumbnail

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2.** Browse your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.

3. Select the files you wish to print. If only one file is selected, you'll print all the files.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

- 4. Choose the File/Print. An option dialog box opens.
- **5.** In **Selection** group, choose to print either the selected media files or all the files included in the folder.
- 6. In Item Size group, choose the desired size of each item in the thumbnail printout.
- 7. In Header & Footer group, click the Print Header and Footer Texts option if you want to print texts at the top and bottom of the printout.
- 8. In the fields below, Specifies the **Header and Footer** texts to print. You can specify macros that will be automatically be replaced by its related variable text at printing. A macro must be specified between brackets {...}:
 - {DATE} Actual print date.
 - {TIME} Actual print time.
 - **{FILENAME}** Filename of the file to print (no path).
 - {PATHNAME} Filename and full path of the file to print.
 - {**PAGE**} Page number.

You can also specify a separator "|" to split the text in two parts. The first part will be printed on the left side and the second part on the right side of the page. If no separator is specified the text is centered.

9. When done, click OK and continue the print procedure.

Move or copy media files

Using the explorer, you can copy or move files in folders.

Move files

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2.** Browse your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the files you wish to move.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

Using the mouse:

4. Using **Drag & Drop**, move the files to the desired location including: A folder visible in the tree, another explorer window or the Librarian folder or tree.

Using the Clipboard:

4. Choose Edit/Cut (Ctrl+X). Select another location and choose Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V).

Copy files

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2.** Browse your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the files you wish to copy.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

Using the mouse:

4. Press the **Ctrl** key and keep it pressed. Using **Drag & Drop**, move the files to the desired location including: A folder visible in the tree, another explorer window or the Librarian folder or tree. Release the mouse button and release the Ctrl key after the mouse button.

Using the Clipboard:

4. Choose Edit/Copy (Ctrl+C). Select another location and choose Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V).

Add a selection of files to the Librarian

Using the explorer, you can add several files to the Librarian.

Add files to the Librarian

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the files you wish to add to the Librarian.

<u>REMARK</u>: You can select several files by clicking on files while pressing on the **CTRL** key. To select a range of files, use the **SHIFT** key.

4. Choose File/Add to the Librarian (F3). The files are copied to the actual Librarian Folder.

IMPORTANT: The files are copied, NOT moved.

Working with media files

All the media files supported by the application can be opened in a specific viewer document window. You can open several types of media files including Images, Flash, Video clips, Sounds (music) and Animations. Each viewer type has its own features. Some of them are common to all media files (print, display full screen...). Let's see one of the most useful.

Supported Media Types

All the media files supported by the application can be opened in a specific viewer document window. You can open several types of media files including Images, Flash, Video clips, Sounds (music) and Animations. Each viewer type has its own features. Here is the list of media files supported by the application:

Images

- Windows® Images (BMP, DIB, WMF)
- Windows[®] Icons and Cursors (ICO, CUR, ANI)
- Macintosh® Images (PICT, PIC, PCT, QTI)
- Photoshop® Images (PSD)
- Portable Network Graphic Images (PNG)
- JPEG (JPG, JPEG)
- Targa® Images (TGA)
- TIFF (TIF, TIFF)
- Kodak® FlashPix® Image (FXP)
- Kodak® PhotoCD® Images (PCD)
- Amiga® Images (IFF, LBM)
- ZSoft® Paintbrush Images (PCX)

Flash movies

Macromedia® Flash movies (SWF)

Video movies

- Windows® Media Video Movies (AVI, WMA, ASF)
- Real® Media Movies (SMI, RAM, RM)
- Apple® QuickTime® Movies (MOV)
- MPEG Movies (MPG, MPEG)

Animations

- Autodesk® Animator Animations (FLI/FLC)
- Animated GIF (GIF)

Sounds and Music

- Layer 3 MPEG (MP3)
- Apple® Wave Sounds (AIF, AIFF)
- Digital Music Modules (S3M, XM, MOD)
- Wave Sounds (SND)
- Windows® Wave Sound (WAV)
- Windows® Media Audio (WMA)
- Midi Music Sequences (MIDI, MDI, RMI)
- Real® Audio Sounds (RA)
- UNIX Sounds (AU)

Open a media file

Using the explorer, you can easily open a media file.

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.

Open a media file

- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- 4. Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

IMPORTANT: If the **Auto Full Screen (Ctrl+F11)** option is ON, the file is opened full screen.

Open a media full screen

- 3. Select the file you wish to open full screen.
- 4. Choose Explorer/Open Item Full Screen (F11) or right-click on it and choose Open Full Screen in the menu.

<u>IMPORTANT</u>: If the **Auto Full Screen (Ctrl+F11)** option is ON, the file is opened full screen using the simple open command.

Switch ON/OFF the Auto Full Screen option

3. Choose Explorer Auto Full Screen option or press Ctrl+F11.

IMPORTANT: If the **Auto Full Screen (Ctrl+F11)** option is ON, the file is opened full screen using the simple open command.

Zoom in, zoom out, change display mode (in full screen mode)

5. While viewing a file full screen, you can zoom in or zoom out by pressing [+] or [-] keys.

- 6. With image files, you can zoom using the left/right mouse buttons. Move the mouse to slide the image on screen (if larger than screen in zoom mode for example). You can also use the arrow keys. A double-click quits the fullscreen mode.
- 7. Three display modes are available (scale, best fit, stretched). You can change the mode by pressing the **Tab** key.

Print a media file

Using the explorer, you can easily print a media file (image, animation or video still only).

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- 4. Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Print a media file (image, animation or video still only)

- 5. Choose the File/Print. An option dialog box opens.
- 6. In Options group, choose Print image in one page option.
- 7. In Header & Footer group, click the Print Header and Footer Texts option if you want to print texts at the top and bottom of the printout.
- 8. In the fields below, Specifies the **Header and Footer** texts to print. You can specify macros that will be automatically be replaced by its related variable text at printing. A macro must be specified between brackets {...}:
 - {DATE} Actual print date.
 - {TIME} Actual print time.
 - {**FILENAME**} Filename of the file to print (no path).
 - {PATHNAME} Filename and full path of the file to print.
 - {**PAGE**} Page number.
- You can also specify a separator "|" to split the text in two parts. The first part will be printed on the left side and the second part on the right side of the page. If no separator is specified the text is centered.
- 9. When done, click OK and continue the print procedure.

Print a media file as a poster (image, animation or video still only)

This feature permit to print an image in very large format. The image is printed on several pages that you'll have to collate after the printing to create a large poster.

- 5. Choose the File/Print. An option dialog box opens.
- 6. In Options group, choose Print image as a poster option. Specify Height and Width in inches.
- 7. In Header & Footer group, click the Print Header and Footer Texts option if you want to print texts at the top and bottom of the printout.

- 8. In the fields below, Specifies the **Header and Footer** texts to print. You can specify macros that will be automatically be replaced by its related variable text at printing. A macro must be specified between brackets {...}:
 - {DATE} Actual print date.
 - {TIME} Actual print time.
 - {FILENAME} Filename of the file to print (no path).
 - **{PATHNAME}** Filename and full path of the file to print.
 - {PAGE} Page number.
- **9.** You can also specify a separator "|" to split the text in two parts. The first part will be printed on the left side and the second part on the right side of the page. If no separator is specified the text is centered.
- 10. When done, click OK and continue the print procedure.

Print as preview

5. You can print in a preview window. It may be useful to see the result before printing. Choose the **File/Print Preview**. An option dialog box opens. Follow the above procedures.

Change display mode

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Change display mode (image, animation or video still only)

- 5. Choose the View/Normal display if you want to see the image or video at fixed scales. In this mode, you can use the zoom commands: Zoom In [+], Zoom Out [-], scale 1:1 (Space)
- 6. Choose the View/Best Fit display if you want the image to be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed within the document window. The image proportion will always be kept. Zoom commands are disabled.
- 7. Choose the View/Maximized display if you want the image to be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed within the document window. The image may be distorted. Zoom commands are disabled

Display full screen

Using the explorer, you can easily open a media file full screen.

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.

Open a media full screen

- 3. Select the file you wish to open fullscreen.
- Choose Explorer/Open Item Full Screen (F11) or right-click on it and choose Open Full Screen in the menu.

IMPORTANT: If the **Auto Full Screen (Ctrl+F11)** option is ON, the file is opened full screen using the simple open command.

Switch ON/OFF the Auto Full Screen option

3. Choose Explorer Auto Full Screen option or press Ctrl+F11.

IMPORTANT: If the **Auto Full Screen (Ctrl+F11)** option is ON, the file is opened full screen using the simple open command.

Zoom in, zoom out, change display mode (in full screen mode)

- 5. While viewing a file fullscreen, you can zoom in or zoom out by pressing [+] or [-] keys.
- 6. With image files, you can zoom using the left/right mouse buttons. Move the mouse to slide the image on screen (if larger than screen in zoom mode for example). You can also use the arrow keys. A double-click quits the fullscreen mode.
- 7. Three display modes are available (scale, best fit, stretched). You can change the mode by pressing the **Tab** key.

Copy a media file to the Clipboard

When a file is opened in a viewer document window, you can copy it in the clipboard. Two elements are copied in the Clipboard:

- The displayed image (if the document contains an image)
- The full **pathname** to the document file. It may be useful to add the document in a project for example.
- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- 2. Browse your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to copy.
- 4. Double click on it or choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) or right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Copy to the Clipboard

5. Select Edit/Copy (Ctrl+C).

Paste the media file in a project

6. Select a project document (screensaver or other) and choose Edit/Paste (Ctrl+V).

Features Specific to the Image Files

Save an image to another file format

If a media file contains images (images, animations, video movies), it may be useful to save the displayed image to a specific file format. It may be different from the original format.

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Save an Image to another format

5. If the document is an image, you can save it to JPEG, BMP, PNG or PSD. Select File/Save As, a dialog box opens. Select the file format and click Save.

Save a Video Snapshot to an image file

5. If the document is a video sequence, you can save an instant snapshot image to a JPEG, BMP, PNG or PSD file. Select File/Save Snapshot As, a dialog box opens. Select the file format and click Save.

Resize an image

The application contains a high quality image resize feature (a.k.a resampling). This may be useful to change an image size without loosing quality.

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Resize the image

- 5. Select Image/Resize Image (R), a dialog box opens.
- 6. Enter the new size in pixels by specifying Width and Height.
- 7. Click OK when done. The image is resized.

Undo the change

- 8. If you want to undo the resize operation, select Edit/Undo (Ctrl+Z).
- 9. You can also redo the change by choosing Edit/Redo (Ctrl+Y).

Save the modified image

10. As the document has been changed, you'll be prompted to save it when you'll close the window. You can only save the new image to a **JPEG**, **BMP**, **PNG** or **PSD** file.

Crop an image

Cropping an image means reducing its size be removing unwanted parts (usually around the image or borders). But this is done without resizing the image content. This may be useful if interesting part of an image is not properly centered.

- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Select the image portion to keep

- 5. First be sure the Selection Mode is the active mode. Select Image/Selection Mode (Z) if necessary.
- **6.** Select the portion of the image you wish to keep using the mouse. A selection rectangle is displayed when done.

Crop the image

- 7. Select Image/Crop Image (C).
- 8. The image is cropped.

Undo the change

- 9. If you want to undo the crop operation, select Edit/Undo (Ctrl+Z).
- 10. You can also redo the change by choosing Edit/Redo (Ctrl+Y).

Save the modified image

11. As the document has been changed, you'll be prompted to save it when you'll close the window. You can only save the new image to a **JPEG**, **BMP**, **PNG** or **PSD** file.

Change the color depth of an image

The image viewer includes a feature to change the color depth of an image. This may be useful to reduce the file size of an image. Three image color depth are supported by the application:

- True Colors with Alpha Channel (32 Bits) Each pixel of the image is coded using 4 bytes. It creates high quality image and supports alpha channel transparency. The file size is very big.
- True Colors (32 Bits) Each pixel of the image is coded using 3 bytes. It creates high quality image but does NOT support alpha channel transparency. The file size is big.
- Indexed colors (32 Bits) Each pixel of the image is coded using 1 bytes. It can only display 256 colors stored in a color table (aka palette). It creates low quality image and does NOT support alpha channel transparency. The file size is small.
- 1. Create a New Explorer window by choosing File/New/New Explorer (Ctrl+E).
- **2. Browse** your disks and select the appropriate folder in the left pane. The media files included in the folder appear in the right pane.
- 3. Select the file you wish to open.
- Double click on it <u>or</u> choose Explorer/Open Item (Enter) <u>or</u> right-click on it and choose Open in the menu.

Change to True Colors with Alpha Channel

- 5. Select Image/Convert to True Color with Alpha. A dialog box opens.
- 6. This dialog permits you to create a transparent area in your image. This feature is useful to create a sprite-ready image with transparent background. To do this, you must click the Convert The Following Color To Transparent option. In the field below, select the color that you want to transform to transparent in the image. This is usually the background color of your image.
- 7. Click OK when done.
- **8. The image is converted**. All the area containing the color specified have been transformed to transparent.

Change to True Colors

- 5. Select Image/Convert to True Color. If the image was 32 bits (with Alpha Channel), a dialog box opens.
- 6. This dialog permits you to specify the color you wish to use as background color.
- 7. Click OK when done.
- **8. The image is converted**. All the area containing transparency have been transformed to the specified color.

Change to Indexed Colors

- 5. Select Image/Convert to True Color. If the image was 32 bits (with Alpha Channel), a dialog box opens.
- 6. This dialog permits you to specify the color you wish to use as background color.
- 7. Click OK when done.
- **8. The image is converted**. All the area containing transparency have been transformed to the specified color. A color table has been associated to the image.

Undo the change

9. If you want to undo the crop operation, select Edit/Undo (Ctrl+Z).

10. You can also redo the change by choosing Edit/Redo (Ctrl+Y).

Save the modified image

11. As the document has been changed, you'll be prompted to save it when you'll close the window. You can only save the new image to a **JPEG**, **BMP**, **PNG** or **PSD** file.

CHAPTER 7

Customizing the Application

In this chapter

- Customizing Toolbars and the Librarian $\ \blacksquare$
 - Changing the Program Preferences

Customizing Toolbars and the Librarian

Customize the main toolbar

The main toolbar is Internet Explorer-like and you can fully customizing it. You can add/remove buttons or change the order they are displayed, show/hide labels and areas and more...

Show/hide the Main Toolbar

1. Right-click on the main toolbar or the top menu and choose **Standard Buttons** in the menu <u>or</u> press **F9**.

Change Main Toolbar text style

- 1. Right-click in the main toolbar or the top menu and choose **No Text Labels** to remove all the texts.
- 2. Right-click in the main toolbar or the top menu and choose All Text Labels to display texts under each button.
- **3.** Right-click in the main toolbar or the top menu and choose **Selective Text Labels** to display texts on right of important buttons only.

Add/remove/move buttons in the Main Toolbar

- 1. Choose View/Customize Main Toolbar in the menu <u>or</u> right-click in the main toolbar and choose Customize Buttons command <u>or</u> double-click the main toolbar.
- 2. The dialog box "Customize Toolbar" Opens.
- **3.** An available toolbar buttons list displays. You can add these buttons in the Current toolbar buttons list by selecting one button and clicking on the Add Button.
- **4.** If you want to delete a button in the current toolbar, you must select it and click on the Remove button.
- **5.** You can Move Up or Move Down the button in the Current Toolbar buttons list. Select the button and click on Move Up/Move Down. You can also use the Drag and Drop to move the buttons.
- 6. If you want to go back with the Default Main toolbar, click on the Reset button.

Show/hide the Recently Used Bar

This bar permits to quick open a file in the application. It contains a long edit zone and is usually located under the main toolbar.

1. Right-click in the main toolbar or the top menu and choose **Recently Used Bar** to show/hide the bar.

Empty the Recently Used List

- 1. Choose View/Preferences. The dialog box "Preferences" opens.
- 2. Select the "Toolbars" tab.
- 3. Click on the "Empty Recently Used List" button. Click OK.

NOTE: You can move toolbar buttons directly from the Toolbar by pressing ALT + selecting the button and moving with the mouse.

You can move or resize the **Recently Used** bar using the mouse: Place the mouse pointer on the left side of the Recently Used area. When the cursor changes into a cross with 4 arrows, move it using drag and drop.

Show/hide the Toolbars

The main toolbar is Internet Explorer-like and you can fully customizing it. You can add/remove buttons or change the order they are displayed, show/hide labels and areas and more...

Show/hide the Main Toolbar

- Document windows contain local toolbars. To hide the local toolbar of a document window, select it and follow this procedure:
- 1. Right-click on the main toolbar or the top menu and choose **Standard Buttons** in the menu <u>or</u> press **F9**.

Show/hide the Recently Used Bar

This bar permits to quick open a file in the application. It contains a long edit zone and is usually located under the main toolbar.

 Right-click in the main toolbar or the top menu and choose Recently Used Bar to show/hide the bar.

Show/hide a Local Toolbar

- Document windows contain local toolbars. To hide the local toolbar of a document window, select it and follow this procedure:
- 1. Choose View/Local Toolbar or press Alt+F9.

Show/hide the Status Bar

1. Choose View/Status Bar or press Alt+F8.

Show/hide the Librarian

1. Choose View/Librarian or press Esc.

Show/hide the Animation (top-right)

1. Right-click on the main toolbar or the top menu and choose Animation in the menu.

NOTES: When the command has a check mark next to it, it means that the toolbar is displayed. When you point to a menu command, the status bar at the bottom of the window displays a description of the command.

Show and hide the Librarian Window

The Librarian is a docked window (integrated in the user-interface). It can be easily shown and hidden.

- 1. Select View/Librarian or press ESC.
- 2. By hiding the Librarian, you gain some space in your application work area. The opened windows are automatically rearranged.

Change the Librarian position on screen

The Librarian is a docked window (integrated in the user-interface). Its location can be easily changed.

- 1. Using the left mouse button, click on the Librarian window title and keep the button pressed.
- 2. Move the mouse over the right or bottom side of the application window and release the button.
- **3.** The Librarian window location has changed. This new location will be saved (even if you quit and restart the application).

Change the Librarian folder location

Files and folders included in the Librarian are located on your disk drive. This location is set by default (the first time you installed the application) in your "My Documents" folder. A sub-folder is created and is named "Axialis Librarian". You can change this folder and location (see below).

- 1. Select View/Preferences or press F2.
- **2.** A dialog box opens. Select the **Librarian** tab. You can change the Librarian folder in the **Path** field. You can also use the Browse button to choose a location using a browse dialog box.
- 3. Click OK when done.
- **4.** Now **quit** the application and **transfer** your files from the old location to the new one (the application does not perform this operation). **Restart** the application.

Changing the Program Preferences

Most of the program settings can be customized using the Preferences dialog box. Select **View/Preferences** or press **F2** to open this dialog box. It includes several option tabs.

Options in the General Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the General tab to display the related options.

Create a new Explorer window

If this option is checked, the application will automatically create a new explorer window each time it starts.

Create a new Screen Saver Project window

If this option is checked, the application will automatically create a new blank screen saver document window each time it starts.

Warn if insufficient video colors

If this box is checked, the application warns you if your display configuration is insufficient (less than 65536 colors) each time it starts. It is highly recommended to configure screen settings to Hi Colors (65536) or True Colors (16.8M) when using the application.

Display Welcome and tips window

If this option is checked, the application automatically opens the welcome window and displays a new Tip of The Day each time it starts

Warn if Project Files are not associated

If this option is checked, the application prompts you when it starts if SSP project files are not properly associated with it. If this box is not checked, the application will ignore bad file association. It is highly recommended to associate SSP with Axialis Screen Saver Producer to permit fast screen saver document access from Windows Explorer.

Show Splash Screen When Application Starts

Uncheck this option if you don't want to display the Axialis splash screen when the application starts.

Warn if Windows components are missing

If this option is checked, the application prompts you at startup if one or more Windows® components are missing or have an old version (ComCtl32 v4.72, Html Help, QuickTime...). For example, the application includes a special feature that permits you to use a built-in "Internet Explorer like" toolbar. ComCtl32 v4.72 or more must be installed in order to use this very useful toolbar. You can install this component directly from this warning window.

Language

You can choose the language of the application. Only available/installed languages are displayed. To add more languages see available packs on our website: http://www.axialis.com.

Use External Internet Browser

If this option is checked, the application will use an External Internet Browser to display web pages. Otherwise, the application will display web pages in a document window.

Maximize Document Windows at Opening

If this option is checked, the application will automatically maximize new document windows.

Auto Save a copy of a Media Files in Projects

If this box is checked, the application automatically stores media files in screen saver documents (sprite images, video, music, sound...).

- If a media file is saved in a project: The image file doesn't need to be present on your hard disk the next time you'll open the SSP document. The drawback is that the SSP file is larger and space consuming.
- If a media file is NOT saved in a project: The SSP file is smaller but the image file must be present on your hard disk (at the right location) or you'll get an error the next time you'll open the SSP document.

Prompt before Sprite Deletion

If this box is checked, the application prompts you before deleting a sprite from a screen saver document. This option is recommended because a sprite deletion cannot be undone.

Prompt to Create a New Document if a Project File Does Not Exist

If this box is checked, the application prompts you to create a new document if you try to open a file that does not exist. It happens when you specify a new filename directly in the "Recent" combo box or if an old document has been removed.

Remember Folder During Save As Operation

If this box is checked, the "Save As" dialog box always starts to the previously used folder. This option is useful to quickly save modified documents in the same folder.

Prompt for Options when Transferring from Photoshop

If this box is checked, you'll be prompted to choose an action each time an image is transferred from Photoshop. Otherwise, the first option will always be chosen.

User Interface options

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the User Interface tab to display the related options.

User Interface Style - Windows Standard User Interface

Allows to use standard Microsoft Windows® interface. If you want to use the new XP interface customization feature, you must choose this option.

User Interface Style - Axialis Software User Interface

Allows using Axialis Software user interface. If you choose this interface you can adjust the color of windows title, controls and more. You can also specify the desired application main color. This color will be applied to every windows and dialog boxes (in the application only). You can only specify a HUE value (you cannot modify the lightness or the saturation of the color).

Background colors - Full Screen Mode

Click here to change the color of the screen background (when you open a media file using full screen: images, video clips...).

Background colors - Document windows

Click here to change the color of the document windows background (when you open a media file window: images, video clips...).

Options in the Toolbars Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Toolbars tab to display the related options.

Local Toolbar Display (within document windows)

If this option is checked, a local toolbar will be initially visible (within the document window) each time you'll open a document. Otherwise, it will be initially hidden. You can set your preferences for each document category: <u>Screen Savers Projects</u>, <u>Animated Sequences</u>, <u>Explorers</u>, <u>Video Clips</u>, <u>Sounds</u>, <u>Flash</u> and <u>Images</u>.

Display Standard Buttons (Main Toolbar)

Specifies whether you want the application to display application standard buttons in the toolbar.

Display Animation

Specifies whether you want the application to display an animation in the toolbar. This feature is accessible only if you have chosen to use an 'Internet Explorer®' like toolbar.

Display "Recently Used" List

If this box is checked, the application displays a 'Recently Used' area in the Toolbar. This area permits you to quickly reopen a file recently opened with this program. To open a file simply click on it in the list. You can also specify a HTTP of FTP file by typing its URL, search an expression in the edit area and just hit 'enter'.

Empty "Recently Used" List

Allows you to empty the Recently Used list.

Text options - No Text label, Show Text labels, Selective Text Label on Right

Specifies how text descriptions of the toolbar buttons appear:

- No Text Labels To display only icons in the Toolbar.
- Show Text Labels To display the names of the buttons underneath each button on the toolbar.
- Selective Text Labels on Right To display the names of certain buttons, such as Search and Library, on their right side.

Options in the Media Types Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Media Types tab to display the related options. You can specify here an External Editor Program for each File Category.

Media Type list

This list specifies the list of supported media files. You can select one or more files to perform an action ('Change Editor' for example). To associate a media file type to Axialis Pro Screen Saver Producer, just check the associated box within this list. To restore the original media file association, uncheck this box. Click on the All button to select all the media file types in the list. Click on the Associate/Restore button to restore the original associations of the selected media file types.

Media Types Details Group

You can change the icon to associate with a selected extension by clicking on the Change icon button.

Click to change the default Viewer application for the selected media file types. This application will be launched when you'll choose the Edit command in Windows explorer.

Click to change the default Editor application for the selected media file types. This external application will be launched when you'll choose the Edit command in Windows or Axialis Pro Screen Saver Producer explorers.

Options in the Librarian Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Librarian tab to display the related options.

Change the Axialis Librarian Location on Disk

You can change the location of the librarian on your hard disk by specifying a new path to the directory structure containing your Media Files.

- 1. Specifies a Path for the librarian or click on the Browse button.
- **2.** When done, click **OK** and restart the application. If you specify the new location for the librarian, the change will occur the next time you'll launch Axialis Screen Saver Producer.

Show Information Window when deleting items

this option is checked, you will be informed each time you delete an item in the librarian. This is just a reminder to inform you that the files has not been deleted but just moved to the "Deleted Items" folder.

Show Information Window when deleting items

If this option is enabled, the application permits you to store various additional properties for each file stored in the Librarian (Author, Keywords, Description...). This extended information is stored in .ii files and is also used to find files in the librarian using a built-in search feature. If this option is unchecked, no .ii files will be created.

Options in the Images Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Images tab to display the related options.

JPEG: Writing options

Image Quality - Specify the JPEG compression level (values from 1 to 99). A low compression level (1 to 10) produces small files but the image quality is very low. A high compression level (80 to 99) produces very good quality images but larger files.

WMF: Default Load Size

Width and Height - Specify the WMF default width and Height. WMF is a vector format. It means that it can be opened and displayed at any size without quality loss. To display it, the application needs to convert it to bitmap and need a default size to perform the conversion.

Kodak PhotoCD

Default Load Size - Specify the default Kodak PhotoCD® (PCD) load size. Kodak PhotoCD® is a multi-resolution format. It means that each PCD file includes several resolutions of the same picture. Small resolutions are fast to load but with poor quality. High resolutions have good quality but are memory consuming.

Image Display mode

- Various Click to set default image display to 'Various Scales'. It means that images will be initially displayed at scale 1:1 (with possibility to change scale)
- **Best Fit** Click to set default image display to 'Best Fit'. It means that images will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The image aspect ratio will always be kept.
- **Full Window** Click to set default image display to 'Full Window'. It means that images will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The image may be distorted when stretched.

Ignore Transparency Information in GIF files

GIF files contain transparency information. By default, the application reads this information and automatically converts the GIF image to a 32BPP bitmap with alpha channel transparency. If this option is chosen, the transparency information will be ignored (GIF only) and the image background will keep its original color (for compatibility with previous versions of the application).

Options in the Movies Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Movies tab to display the related options.

Animation Default Display mode

- Various Scales It means that animations will be initially displayed at scale 1:1 (with possibility to change scale).
- **Best Fit (keep aspect ratio)** It means that animations will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The animation proportion will always be kept.
- Full Window (stretched) It means that animations will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The animation may be distorted when stretched.

Movie Default Display mode

- Various Scales It means that movies will be initially displayed at scale 1:1 (with possibility to change scale).
- **Best Fit (keep aspect ratio)** It means that movies will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The movie proportion will always be kept.
- **Full Window (stretched)** It means that movies will be stretched to the maximum available size when displayed (within document windows or full screen). The movie may be distorted when stretched.

Animation Default Playback Speed

Specifies the initial playback speed of animations (in document windows or full screen only, not in screen savers).

Movie Default Playback Speed

Specifies the initial playback speed of movies (in document windows or full screen only, not in screen savers).

Options in the Temporary Files Tab

To access these options, choose View/Preferences or press F2. The "Preferences" dialog box opens, click on the Temporary Files tab to display the related options.

Store picture previews on disk for fast browsing

Pictures preview you see in the Explorer windows are stored in a special folder for quick viewing later. This feature greatly improves preview speed when you browse your computer. You can define below the amount of disk space you want to make available for those files or just disable this feature (not recommended).

If this option is checked, you can adjust the cash size (10, 100 or 200 MB) using the slider. You can also check Exclude files from Removable & CDROM drives and Exclude Files from Network to avoid overloading the cash.

If you click on the DELETE button, the application warns you if you want to delete all in files in Temporary Preview folder. Click on YES or NO.

NOTE: This operation can't be undone.
CHAPTER 7

Miscellaneous Features, Tips, Uninstallation

In this chapter

- Quick-open a file using the Recently Used Bar
 - Manage favorite files
- Paste an image from another program to a project
 - Paste an image as a new document
 - Desktop Reorganization
 - Acquire a new image from a Twain device
 - Uninstall or repair the application installation

Quick-open a file using the Recently Used Bar

This bar permits to quick open a file in the application. It contains a long edit zone and is usually located under the main toolbar.

Quick-open a media file or project

1. In the **Recently Used** edit zone, enter the full pathname of a file and press **Enter**. The application automatically opens the requested file.

Quick-open a recently-opened media file or project

1. In the **Recently Used** edit zone, click on the down arrow button (located on the right side of the bar). A large drop-list opens, select the file in the list.

Quick-create a new project

- 1. In the Recently Used area, enter the full pathname of a file that does not exist and press Enter.
- 2. As the file does not exists, the **File not Found dialog box** opens. It asks you if you want to create a new document using this filename. Click on **YES**. A new project is created.

NOTE: If you specify a filename without a folder location, the application automatically searches (or creates if you specify a project) the file in the default "Open" folder (this is the location you specify the last time you used the Open dialog box).

Manage favorite files

If you have favorite documents (media files or projects) or folders, you can add them to a "Favorite List" to retrieve them faster. You can also easily manage this list.

Add a Document to the Favorite List

1. Select an opened document window.

2. Choose Favorites/Add to Favorites.

In the area **"Name**" displays the name of the document as it will appear in the Favorite List. You can change the name and click **OK**.

Add a Folder to the Favorite List

1. Open a New Explorer window and select the desired folder (Ctrl+E).

2. Choose Favorites/Add to Favorites.

In the area **"Name**" displays the name of the document as it will appear in the Favorite List. You can change the name and click **OK**.

Open an Item from the Favorite List

- 1. Open the Favorites menu.
- 2. Choose the desired item to open it.

If the item is a file, a document window opens.

If the item is a folder, an Axialis Explorer window opens.

Modify the Favorite List

- 1. Choose Modify/Favorites.
- **2.** The **Favorite List** contents displays. You must select the document you want to change or remove from the list.
- **3.** If you want to change the name of the selected document (you will change the name that appears in the list, not the filename on disk) click the Rename button.
- **4.** If you want to remove the selected document from the list (you will NOT delete the file or folder on the disk) click the **Remove** button.

Paste an image from another program to a project

You can copy an image from an external program and paste it into a screen saver project window. The application will then prompt you to know what you want to do with this new image.

Paste an image from another program to a project

- **1.** Copy an image from another program to the Clipboard.
- 2. Select a Screen Saver Project and choose Edit/Paste.
- **3.** The **"Paste a New Image To Screen Saver project"** dialog box opens. You must specify the type of operation to perform and a file format for this new image (The image will be saved in the project file).
- 4. Choose a format:
 - Windows Bitmap (BMP)
 - Portable Network Graphic (PNG)
 - JPEG Compressed (JPG)

5. Choose the operation to perform:

- Create a new sprite with transparency: Use the image present in the Clipboard. This sprite will use the image background color as transparent
- **Create a new sprite**: Use the image present in the Clipboard. This sprite will be opaque (no transparency).
- Use it as Tiled Wallpaper: Use the image in the Clipboard as the screen saver's background. The same image will be use like tiles to create the background
- Use it as a Stretched Wallpaper: Use the image in the Clipboard as the screen saver's background. The image will be stretched to cover the entire screen.

Paste an image as a new document

If an image is present in the Clipboard, you can paste it in the application and create a new Image document window.

Paste an image as a new document

- 1. Select an image item in the application (Librarian, Explorer, opened image document with or without selection) and choose Edit Copy.
- 2. You can also copy an image from an external application.
- 3. Choose Edit/Paste as a new image.
- 4. A new document is created. The image is displayed in a new "ImageN" window.
- 5. Choose File/Save As from the edit window or File/Add to librarian.

You can save the image as a JPEG, PNG, BMP or PSD format or add it to the Librarian (F3).

NOTE: This command will permit you to easily add new image files to the application. Each time you select this command you create a new document window.

Desktop Reorganization

The application features a dynamic system to ergonomically reorganize the application Desktop area. With this system, document windows are tiled and grouped by type. Desktop is divided in 2 parts: <u>Explorer</u> and <u>Search Result</u> windows in one part, <u>Media Document</u> windows in the other part. It can be automatic or manual.

Reorganize Desktop at any Time

- 1. Choose Windows/Reorganize Desktop or press F12.
- 2. You can also click on the Display button on the main toolbar.

NOTE: This feature is useful only if you don't choose an automatic reorganisation option (see below).

Toggle Automatic Desktop Reorganization

1. Choose Window/Automatic Reorganization.

NOTE: If this option is enabled, a Desktop Reorganization is performed each time you open, close, reduce or restore a window

Change Reorganisation mode

1. Choose **Windows/Full Window Reorganization** if you want the application to display each document window using all the available space.

2. Choose Windows/Tile Reorganization if you want the application organize the windows using an ergonomic tile scheme.

TIP: You can switch from one win to another using Ctrl+F6 or Shift+Ctrl+F6.

Acquire a new image from a Twain device

If you have a Twain compatible <u>scanner</u>, <u>video capture card</u> or <u>numeric camer</u>a, you can acquire and create a new image document from within the application.

Acquire an image from a Twain device

- 1. If you have several capture devices, select the desired device using the **File/Select Source** command then click OK.
- 2. Choose File/Acquire to open the Twain interface.

NOTE: Each time you acquire an image a new window is created.

Uninstall or repair the application

Uninstall the application

This procedure removes all the application files (program, samples, temporary files) and cleans the Windows registry.

 Open Start menu in the Windows task bar, choose Control Panel. Double-click on the Add or Remove Programs icon. In the list, choose "Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer" and click Change/Remove. The Axialis Setup window opens.
 or -

Open Start menu in the Windows task bar, choose All Programs >. Select "Axialis Software". In the sub-menu, choose "Uninstall or repair Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer". The Axialis Setup window opens.

2. Select "Uninstall Application" then click Next. Follow the instructions.

NOTE: If you have added new files in the librarian, the uninstaller DOES NOT remove them. Please delete them manually.

To repair the application files

If you have technical issues with the application, some files may be corrupted. In such a case, try to repair the installed files. This procedure keeps your settings. It just restores the program and the help files. To perform this operation, the original setup file must be present on your hard disk.

 Open Start menu in the Windows task bar, choose Control Panel. Double-click on the Add or Remove Programs icon. In the list, choose "Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer" and click Change/Remove. The Axialis Setup window opens.

- or -

Open Start menu in the Windows task bar, choose All Programs >. Select "Axialis Software". In the sub-menu, choose "Uninstall or repair Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer". The Axialis Setup window opens.

- 2. Select **"Repair Installation"** then click **Next**. Setup will try to launch the installation file at the original location. If the program is not present or elsewhere, please specify the right location using the opened dialog box.
- 3. The repair procedure starts. When completed, a final message is displayed. Click Finish.

IMPORTANT: If you upgraded online since your original installation, you need to upgrade again. The repair process resets your program version.

CHAPTER 8

Registering, Upgrading, Online features

In this chapter

- Online Registration
- Online Free Upgrade
 - Customer Service
- Contact Axialis Software

Online Registration using Internet

IMPORTANT - Information for Version 3.5 Owners

If you've already registered Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer $\underline{v3.5}$ (or a prior version), you need to register again specifying the Product Key you've received with this new version. If you don't register, you won't be able to upgrade to future versions.

Why Register?

Join the family of registered Axialis Software customers by registering your program. The online registration is NOT a purchase procedure. Registration can be completed in just a few seconds using Internet. Your personal information be kept strictly confidential and not given or sold to anyone.

If you register, you'll get the following benefits:

- LIFETIME FREE UPGRADES for the REST OF YOUR LIFE! Incredible but TRUE! Never pay again for future versions (for registered customers and using Internet online update only).
- Receive up-to-the-minute notices about new products and offers from Axialis Software.
- Free technical support (using Internet email only).

To Register Online Using Internet

- 1. Choose the command ?/Online Registration.
- 2. A dialog box opens. Read general info then click Register Now.
- 3. A second "Online Registration Using Internet" dialog box opens:

Your Personal Login Data: To register, you must specify yourself as a customer. If this is the first time you register using this online system, choose "New Customer". Otherwise, specify your personal login data.

- Check the "I'm a New customer (or I don't have a Username)" option if you've never registered an Axialis Product using this online registration system. Choose this option only if you don't have an Axialis Customer username/password logon data. Otherwise, choose the other option "I Already Have a Username".
- Check the "I already have a Username" option if you've already registered an Axialis Product using this online registration system. Choose this option only if you have an Axialis Customer username/password logon data. Otherwise, choose the other option "I'm a New Customer".

IMPORTANT: if you've registered another Axialis program using this new registration system (such as AX-CDPlayer, Screen Saver Producer) you should already have an Axialis Username

4. If you're a New Customer:

A personal account will be created with your personal info (name, email, address, country, username, password, hint question...). Your personal information will be kept strictly confidential and will never be sold or given to any third company. A "New Customer" dialog box opens:

 Name - Specify your <u>Name</u> here. This is not a username but your Real Name. Ex: "John Smith".

- Email Specify here your <u>personal e-mail address</u>. This address is important. It will be used to send you information about new products, offers... Confirm this address in the **Confirm** field.
- Address Specify here your <u>personal address</u> (street, city, state, zip...). This field is facultative.
- **Country** Specify here your <u>country</u>.
- Language Specify here your preferred language. This field is facultative.
- Username Specify here your desired <u>Username</u>. As a new customer you must specify a new username. If the username you specified already exists, you will be asked to choose a different one. This field is not case sensitive and must contain at least 6 characters. This field is very important: <u>it must be easy to remember</u>, but not too easy! It's not recommended to specify spaces in your username.
- Password Specify here your <u>Password</u>. As a new customer you must specify a new password. This field is not case sensitive and must contain at least 6 characters. This field is very important: <u>it must be easy to remember</u>, <u>but not too easy</u>! It's not recommended to specify spaces in your password. Confirm this password in the **Confirm** field. This confirmation is useful to avoid errors.
- Question Specify here your password Hint Question. If you have lost your password, you'll be able to retrieve it using this question. In such a case, your personal hint question will be asked to you. If your answer is correct (if it matches your hint answer) then your password will be given to you. Specify a personal question only. Ex: "What's the last name of your neighbor?"
- Answer Specify here your password Hint Answer. If you have lost your password, you'll be able to retrieve it using this answer. In such a case, your personal hint question will be asked to you. If your answer is correct (if it matches this hint answer) then your password will be given to you. Specify short answer that must not be too easy for other people. This field is not case sensitive. It's not recommended to specify spaces in your answer.

5. If you already have a Username:

- Specify in the **Username** area, your personal Axialis Customer Username. If you're already an Axialis customer (if you already have registered a program using this new online registration system, not the old one), you should have a personal Username. The username is not case sensitive.
- Specify in the **Password** area your personal Axialis Customer Password. If you're already an Axialis customer (if you already have registered a program using this new online registration system, not the old one), you should have a personal Password. The password is not case sensitive.

IMPORTANT: If you have lost your password click on the **Lost Password** button. A Web page will open and your personal hint question will be asked to you. If your answer is correct, your password is displayed. You specify the hint question and answer when you create your customer account (new customer).

- 6. When done, click on the Next button. A fourth "Online Registration Using Internet" dialog box opens.
 - In the **"The Product You purchased"** area, provide information about the product your purchased..
 - In the "Product Key" area, specify the Product Key you received after your purchase.

NOTE: The product key has been sent to you when you purchased the product or received an upgrade. It has the following format: 12345678-12345-12345-12345-12345. In this edit zone, you find a copy of the key you specified when you installed the program. We recommend you to leave it as is.

- In the "Where did you purchase ..." enter the name of the reseller (or Web site) where you purchased the program. Please specify also the date and the order number (if possible). <u>Important</u>: A correct information is required to register. If you don't specify this info, your registration will be rejected.
- 7. When done, click on the **Next** button. A five **"Online Registration Using Internet"** dialog box opens:

Ready to Register: You are about to send your registration information. You must be connected to Internet before proceeding. If you are not connected to Internet, please connect now. If you're connected to Internet through a proxy/firewall server, fill the proxy related fields.

If you' using a modem, check that you're connected to Internet. If you're connected to Internet without a Firewall, click Register Now. If you use a Firewall, check the Connected to Internet using a Proxy/Firewall box and fill the following fields:

- Address & Port Specify here the HTTP Proxy address and port number (usually 80).
- Proxy authentication is required If this box is checked, the application will send an authentication message to the proxy server when connecting to Internet. Check this option <u>only if your server requires authentication</u> then fill the following fields:
- Login & Password Specify here the Proxy Authentication Login & Password.

8. Click the Register Now button. The last dialog box opens showing the registration progress.

9. Congratulations! You're registered.

To Access your Customer Account

We recommend you to log into your customer account (<u>http://www.axialis.com/customer</u>) to check that your registration has been successfully completed. You need your username and password to access your account.

Upgrade the application using Internet

This is an update system which is reserved to registered users only. It is part of Axialis Lifetime License. It works through Internet to automatically upgrade your application to the latest release.

It's FREE and for LIFE! Pay once and get all new versions for using Online Update.

Upgrade your Application Online Using Internet

1. Choose the command ?/Free Online Update.

- **2.** A **"Online Update"** dialog box opens. Axialis Online Update will check our server for a new version and download a patch if necessary. To upgrade your application online, you must be a registered user of this application. customer Username and Password:
 - It requires authentication then specify your Axialis Customer Username and Password. If you're already an Axialis customer (if you already have registered a program using this new online registration system, not the old one), you should have a personal Username and Password. Username and Password are NOT case sensitive.
 - If you have lost your password, click the "Oops! I've lost my password..." button. A Web page will open and your personal hint question will be asked to you. If your answer is correct, your password is displayed. You specify the hint question and answer when you create your customer account (new customer).

IMPORTANT: We strongly recommend you to save and close all the opened screen saver project windows before proceeding (at the end of the download procedure, the application will be restarted).

- **3.** A **"Ready to Register"** dialog box opens. If you' using a modem, check that you're connected to Internet. If you're connected to Internet without a Firewall, click **Update Now**. If you use a Firewall, check the **Connected to Internet using a Proxy/Firewall** box and fill the following fields:
- 4. In the HTTP Settings group specify:
 - Address & Port Specify here the HTTP Proxy address and port number (usually 80).
 - Proxy authentication is required If this box is checked, the application will send an authentication message to the proxy server when connecting to Internet. Check this option <u>only if your server requires authentication</u> then fill the Login & Password fields below.
- 5. In the FTP Settings group specify:
 - **Firewall Type** Specify here the FTP Firewall Authentication type you use. We support the following types:
 - . SITE hostname
 - . USER after logon
 - . Proxy OPEN
 - . Transparent
 - . USER with no logon
 - . USER FireID@Remotehost
 - . USER RemoteID@remoteHost fire ID
 - . USER remoteID@fireID@remoteHost
 - Address & Port Specify here the <u>FTP Proxy address</u> and <u>port number</u> (usually 80).
 - Login & Password Specify here the Proxy Authentication Login & Password.
- 6. Click the Update Now button. The last dialog box opens showing the connexion and download progress.

NOTE: If a new version is available, a patch is downloaded and the application is restarted to be upgraded.

Online Customer Service on Internet

The customer services are available to registered Axialis customers only. Once you've purchased an Axialis product we strongly recommend you to <u>register online</u> using either the feature included in the program or using the <u>online form (http://www.axialis.com/customer</u>).

Accessing Customer Service from the Application

- 1. Launch the application.
- 2. Select Help/Customer Area.
- 3. The built-in Browser opens displaying the customer service page.

IMPORTANT: The application will access the Internet. This may result in an alert message from your **firewall** program (if any installed). You can configure your firewall to authorize the application to access to Internet. **Axialis applications DO**

NEVER access the Internet without informing you. Also, our applications do not (and will never) contain **spyware** or **malicious code**.

Accessing Customer Service from an Internet Browser

1. Launch your Internet Browser

2. Enter this URL in the address bar: http://www.axialis.com/customer/

Contact Axialis Software Team

Due to recent SPAM growth, you cannot contact us by direct email anymore. We've created a contact page on our website. It includes various ways to contact us. The most convenient way is to use the contact forms accessible from this page. Using this form, we'll receive a message and the rest of the discussion bill be made by email.

Contacting us using an Internet Browser

1. Launch your Internet Browser

- Enter this URL in the address bar: <u>http://www.axialis.com/contact/</u>. You can choose on of the following topic to contact us:
 - Ask a technical question about a program
 - Report a bug in a program
 - Suggest a new function in a program
 - Send feedback about this website
 - Ask questions about prices, site license
 - Get information about Axialis Software company
 - Send a Translation Proposal
 - Other

If you're a customer or have a purchase question, please check our <u>Customer FAQ</u> (<u>http://www.axialis.com/customer/</u>) before contacting us.

Index

Α

| Acknowlegments4 |
|---------------------------------|
| Acquire |
| new image213 |
| Acquire |
| Activation122 |
| Activation code |
| Specify157 |
| Activation code 157 |
| Actual folder |
| Print180 |
| Actual folder 180 |
| Add |
| animated sprite18 |
| background music98 |
| default music110 |
| movie111 |
| opened document182 |
| photos |
| RSS reader78 |
| selection188 |
| slide specific sound108 |
| static sprite14 |
| Add14 |
| Add16 |
| Add18 |
| Add |
| Add |
| Add98 |
| Add 108 |
| Add 110 |
| Add 111 |
| Add 182 |
| Add 188 |
| Add items 182 |
| Add items using Import function |
| Add slides 104 |
| Add sprite Collision effects93 |
| Add sprite collision sounds93 |
| Add sprites |
| Add/remove video movies 126 |
| Allow |

| user interact |
|------------------------------------|
| Animated sprite |
| Adding 18 |
| Animated sprite |
| Animation111 |
| Another file format |
| Another program |
| project |
| Another program |
| Arrange |
| slide sequence |
| Arrange |
| |
| User Licence Agreement |
| |
| В |
| Background |
| Defining13, 34, 52 |
| Background 13 |
| Background 34 |
| Background |
| Background music |
| Add |
| Defining22, 40 |
| Background music |
| Background music |
| Background music |
| Box image |
| Browse media files full screen 180 |
| С |
| Change display mode 192 |
| Change Flash file pathname 119 |
| Change Flash file position 120 |
| Change Flash file size 120 |
| Change folder icon181 |
| Change Motion |
| Change playlist order129 |
| Change slide image pathname 107 |
| Change sprite Initial Position |
| Change sprite size |

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer CORPORATE EDITION

| Change Video file position |
|---|
| Change Video file size 130 |
| Changing |
| color depth196 |
| item display179 |
| Librarian folder location |
| Librarian position |
| Chanaina |
| Changing 174 |
| Changing 179 |
| Changing 196 |
| Changing 202 |
| Changing 202 |
| Clipboard 103 |
| Calex depth |
| |
| Change |
| Color depth 196 |
| Command-line options 160 |
| Compilation160 |
| Compilation Summary143, 159 |
| Compile |
| Installable Screen Saver 102, 114, 124, 132 |
| Screen Saver file 102, 113, 124, 132, 134 |
| screensaver |
| Compile23 |
| Compile |
| Compile |
| Compile |
| Compile 102 |
| Compile 113 |
| Compile 114 |
| Compile 124 |
| Compile 124 |
| Compile 132 |
| Compile 132 |
| Compile 134 |
| Compile 142 |
| Compile |
| Computer |
| Search media files |
| Computer |
| Computer 185 |
| Contact Axialis Software 220 |
| Сору |
| media file193 |
| Сору 193 |
| Copy media files |
| Create |
| install package |
| new Explorer window |
| new folder 178 |
| new project 11.33.51 |
| slide show |
| slide show based screen saver project 103 |
| shide show bused screen saver project 100 |
| time limited shareware sereepsayer |
| Video based screep server project |
| Create |
| |
| Create |
| Create |
| Create |

| Create | 51 |
|---|---|
| Create | 60 |
| Create | 76 |
| Create | 88 |
| Create | 103 |
| Create | 103 |
| Create | 125 |
| Create | 178 |
| Create | 184 |
| Create Flash Based Screen Saver | 115 |
| Create transparent sprite | 95 |
| Crop | |
| Image | 195 |
| Crop | 195 |
| Customize | |
| main toolbar | 200 |
| screensaver icon | 80 |
| screensaver illustration image | 82 |
| Customize | 80 |
| Customize | 82 |
| Customize | 200 |
| Customize duration | 108 |
| Customize icon | . 153 |
| Customize screen saver background 109, | 121, |
| 131 | . , |
| Customize transition effect | 108 |
| D | |
| | |
| | |
| | 440 |
| Add | 110 |
| Add Default music | 110 11 0 |
| Add Default music Defining | 110 11 0 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 11 0 34, 52 22, 40 |
| Add Default music background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 40 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 40 52 177 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 177 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 177 178 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 177 178 178 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 177 178 178 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 34 52 177 178 178 135 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 34 52 177 178 135 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 34 52 177 178 178 135 135 131 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 34 52 177 178 178 135 135 151 192 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 110 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 13 22 34 40 52 177 178 178 135 135 151 192 181 109 108 |
| Add Default music Defining background | 110 110 13 22 34 40 52 177 178 178 135 135 151 192 181 109 108 108 |
| Add Default music Defining background background music 2 Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Delete items Deleted items folder empty Deleted items folder Description Specify Description Display full screen Display general properties Display slide full screen Display slide size Display slide size Display/Change slide information Duplicate Sprites | 110 110 110 |
| Add Default music Defining background background music 2 Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Defining Deletei items Deleted items folder empty Deleted items folder Description Specify Description Display full screen Display general properties Display slide full screen Display slide full screen Display slide full screen Display slide full screen Display/Change slide information Duplicate Sprites | 110 110 34, 52 22, 40 13 22 34 52 177 178 178 135 135 135 151 192 116 181 109 96 |

| 178 |
|-------------------|
| |
| 02, 114, 124, 132 |
| |
| |

| Explorer Functions |
|--|
| Export files 179 |
| F |
| Favorites |
| Managing |
| Favorites |
| Specify 134 144 |
| Filename 131 |
| Filename 144 |
| Files |
| Librarian |
| Files |
| Flash file |
| Save120 |
| Flash file 120 |
| Flash® file |
| Specifying53 |
| Flash® file |
| Flash® screensaver70 |
| Folder content |
| Print |
| Folder content 100 |
| G |
| General tab |
| н |
| Hide |
| Librarian |
| Hido 174 |
| |
| Hide |
| Hide |
| Hide |
| Hide |
| Hide 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 |
| Iide 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 |
| Iide 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I 202 Image 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 196 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 212 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 212 Image 212 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 211 Image 212 Image stab 206 Import files 178 |
| IIIde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 211 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Inport/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install Photoshop® plug_ip 164 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install Photoshop® plug-in 164 SCR screepsquer 84 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 194 Image 195 Image 196 Image 212 Image stab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install Photoshop® plug-in 164 SCR screensaver 84 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 194 Image 195 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 196 Image 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install 164 SCR screensaver 84 Install |
| II 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 196 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install 164 SCR screensaver 84 Install 84 Install 164 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 196 Image 211 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install 164 SCR screensaver 84 Install 164 Install 164 Install 164 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 211 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install 164 SCR screensaver 84 Install 164 Install 164 Install 164 Install package 27, 45, 60 Creating 27, 45, 60 Iocation 144 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 212 Images tab 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install Photoshop® plug-in 164 SCR screensaver 84 Install 164 Install 164 Install 164 Install package 27, 45, 60 Iocation 144 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I 202 Image 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 211 Image 212 Image 212 Image 212 Image 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Install 164 Install 164 Install 84 Install 84 Install 164 Install package 27 |
| Inde 174 Hide 202 I Image Crop 195 Paste 211, 212 Resize 194 Save 194 Image 195 Image 195 Image 211 Image 212 Image and the state 206 Import files 178 Import/Export sprites 96 Information on Activation Codes 168 Install 164 Install 84 Install 84 Install 164 Install 164 Install package 27 Install package 27 Install package 27 Install package 45 Install package 60 |

| Compile 102, 114, 124, 132 |
|-------------------------------|
| Installable Screen Saver 102 |
| Installable Screen Saver 114 |
| Installable Screen Saver 124 |
| Installable Screen Saver 132 |
| Internet |
| Item |
| Open 175 |
| Preview |
| Rename 176 |
| Item display |
| Change |
| Item display |
| Item full screen |
| Open 175 |
| Item full screen 175 |
| |
| L |
| Librarian |
| files 188 |
| hide174, 202 |
| Librarian 172 |
| Librarian |
| Librarian 177 |
| Librarian |
| Librarian |
| Librarian |
| Librarian folder location |
| Chanae |
| Librarian folder location |
| Librarian folder location 202 |
| Librarian position |
| Change 17/ 202 |
| |
| Librarian position 174 |
| Librarian position |

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer CORPORATE EDITION

| Add | 111 |
|--|--|
| Movie | 111 |
| Movies Tab | 207 |
| N | |
| N Navy da avera a st | ~1~ |
| | 212 |
| New Explorer window | |
| Create | 184 |
| New Explorer window | 184 |
| New folder | |
| Create | 178 |
| New folder | 178 |
| New image | |
| Acquire | 213 |
| New image | 213 |
| New project | 210 |
| Creating 11.33 | 54 |
| Cleding |), 01 11 |
| New project | |
| New project | 33 |
| New project | 51 |
| 0 | |
| Online Customer Services | 210 |
| | 217 |
| | 210 |
| Open | |
| item | 175 |
| item full screen | 175 |
| media file | 190 |
| Open | 175 |
| Open | 175 |
| Open | 190 |
| epen | |
| Opened document | |
| Opened document | 180 |
| Opened document Add | 182 |
| Opened document Add Opened document | 182 1 82 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 1 82 208 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 1 82 208 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 1 82 208 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 212 211 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 212 211 212 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 212 211 212 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 212 211 212 35 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 35 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 35 73 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 35 73 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 35 73 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 164 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 126 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 165 126 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 164 165 126 177 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 165 164 164 165 126 177 177 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 165 126 177 177 186 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 164 165 126 177 177 186 |
| Opened document Add Opened document Options | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 164 164 164 165 126 177 186 156 |
| Opened document Add Opened document | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 164 164 164 164 |
| Opened document Add Opened document | 182 182 208 212 211 212 35 73 164 164 164 164 164 164 164 164 |

| Print | |
|---|--|
| actual folder ' | 80 |
| folder content | 86 |
| media file ' | 91 |
| Print | 80 |
| Print 1 | 86 |
| Print 1 | 01 |
| Professional Scroop Sayor Producer | 21 |
| Proiessional Screen Saver Producer | Z |
| Project | |
| another program2 | 211 |
| Save22, 41, 55, 4 | 01 |
| Project | 22 |
| Project | 41 |
| Project | 55 |
| Project | 96 |
| Project | 96 |
| Project | 96 |
| Project 1 | 01 |
| Project | 0/ |
| Project | 07 |
| Project | 201 |
| | 20 |
| | 30 |
| Project | 211 |
| Project SSP | |
| Save | 131 |
| Project SSP 1 | 13 |
| Project SSP 1 | 23 |
| Project SSP 1 | 31 |
| 0 | |
| | |
| QUICKIY 68, 69, 70, | |
| | / |
| Quietly | 71 85 |
| Quietly | 71 85 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties | 71 85 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set | /1 85 92 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties | 92 92 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Pandomize position | 92 92 92 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position | 71 85 92 92 92 94 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 92 94 77 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 92 94 76 76 |
| Quietly R Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 92 94 76 76 76 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 92 92 92 94 |
| QuietlyRandom Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 |
| QuietlyRandom Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item Rename | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item Rename | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item Rename | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 78 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 92 94 76 212 94 78 78 78 78 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 92 92 92 94 76 76 76 76 76 78 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 92 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 94 76 76 212 94 78 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 94 94 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename item | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 78 78 78 94 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 78 78 94 120 194 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 76 712 194 94 78 78 78 78 78 94 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 176 76 212 194 94 78 78 78 78 78 94 120 194 101 131 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 |
| QuietlyR Random Sprite Properties Set Random Sprite Properties Randomize position Rename | 71 85 92 92 94 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 76 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 78 |

| Save |
|----------------------------------|
| Save |
| Save slide 107 |
| Save sprite image |
| SCR screensaver |
| install |
| SCR screensaver84 |
| Screen |
| Screen saver |
| Specific Flash Variables |
| Specific FSCommands |
| Screen saver8 |
| Screen saver |
| Screen saver |
| Screen Saver file |
| Compile 102 113 124 132 134 |
| Screen Squer file |
| Screen Squer file |
| Screen Squer file |
| Screen Saver file |
| Screen Saver file |
| Screen saver full |
| |
| Test |
| |
| Screen saver full |
| Screen saver full |
| screen saver tull screen |
| 102 |
| |
| Screensaver |
| Compiling |
| Screensaver23 |
| Screensaver42 |
| Screensaver |
| Screensaver78 |
| Screensaver85 |
| Screensaver filename |
| Specify151 |
| Screensaver filename151 |
| Screensaver icon |
| customize80 |
| Screensaver icon80 |
| Screensaver illustration image |
| customize82 |
| Screensaver illustration image82 |
| Search items 176 |
| Search media files |
| |
| computer185 |
| computer |

| Pandom Sprite Properties | 02 |
|---------------------------------------|------------|
| cot | |
| Shortoute using Decently llead grag | |
| Shoriculs using Recently used area | 174 200 |
| | 1/4, 202 |
| Show Folders | |
| show Grid | |
| Show Info Tooltips | 180 |
| Show-Hide | |
| Toolbars | 201 |
| Show-Hide | 201 |
| Slide sequence | |
| Arrange | 106 |
| Slide sequence | 106 |
| Slide show | |
| create | 103 |
| Slide show | 103 |
| Slide show based screen saver project | |
| Create | 103 |
| Slide show based screep sayer project | 103 |
| Side show based screen saver project | 103 |
| Silde specific sound | 400 |
| | 108 |
| Silde specific sound | 108 |
| Slideshow screensaver | 69 |
| Specific Flash Variables | |
| Screen Saver | 122 |
| Specific Flash Variables | 122 |
| Specific FSCommands | |
| Screen Saver | 121 |
| Specific FSCommands | 121 |
| Specify | |
| Activation code | 157 |
| description | 135 |
| filename | 134 144 |
| Flash® file | 53 |
| nreview parameter | 1/1 156 |
| screensquer filename | 151 |
| | 1/0 155 |
| User License Agreement | . 140, 100 |
| Specify | 100 |
| Specily | |
| | |
| | 135 |
| | |
| Specify | |
| Specify | 144 |
| Specify | 145 |
| Specify | 150 |
| Specify | 151 |
| Specify | 155 |
| Specify | 156 |
| Specify | 157 |
| Specify sprite type | 95 |
| Specifying display settings | |
| Specifying transitions | |
| Speed | 02 04 |
| Splach screen parameters | 72, 74 |
| | 110 155 |
| | . 140, 155 |
| spiasn screen parameters | 140 |
| spiasn screen parameters | 155 |
| sprite based screen saver project | _ |
| Create | 88 |

Axialis Professional Screen Saver Producer CORPORATE EDITION

| Sprite screensaver |
|---|
| Sprites 16 SSP file 101 Static sprite 101 Adding 14 Static sprite 14 Static sprite 14 Step 134, 135, 137, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 150, 151, 153, 155, 156, 157 Supported media types 189 System Requirements 5 T Temporary Files tab 208 Test 102 rest 102 Test 113 Test 123 |
| SSP file 101 Static sprite 14 Adding 14 Static sprite 14 Step 150 Step 150 Supported media types 189 System Requirements 5 T Temporary Files tab 208 Test 208 screen saver full 113 123 Test 102 113 Test 113 123 |
| Static sprite 14 Adding 14 Static sprite 14 Step 134, 135, 137, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 150, 151, 153, 155, 156, 157 Supported media types 189 System Requirements 5 T Temporary Files tab 208 Test 102 Test 102 Test 113 Test 123 |
| Adding 14 Static sprite 14 Step 134, 135, 137, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 150, 151, 153, 155, 156, 157 189 Supported media types |
| Static sprite 14 Step |
| Step 134, 135, 137, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 150, 151, 153, 155, 156, 157 Supported media types |
| 150, 151, 153, 155, 156, 157 Supported media types |
| Supported media types |
| System Requirements |
| T Temporary Files tab 208 Test 208 screen saver full 113, 123, 132 screen saver full screen 102 Test 102 Test 113 Test 123 |
| ITemporary Files tab208Testscreen saver full113, 123, 132screen saver full screen102Test102Test113Test123 |
| Temporary Files tab206Testscreen saver full |
| screen saver full |
| screen saver full |
| screen saver full screen 102 Test 102 Test 113 Test 123 |
| Test |
| Test |
| Test |
| |
| Test |
| Thumbnail 186 |
| Time-limited shareware screensaver |
| create76 |
| Time-limited shareware screensaver76 |
| Toggle Auto full screen option |
| Toolbars |
| Show-Hide201 |
| Toolbars |
| Twain device |
| Туре92 |
| U |
| Uninstall |

| application |
|----------------------------------|
| Uninstall |
| |
| Photoshop® plug-in |
| Use |
| Use Free Online Update |
| User interact |
| Allow |
| User interact |
| User Interface options |
| User Licence Agreement |
| Axialis Software |
| User Licence Agreement 3 |
| User License Agreement |
| Specify 150 |
| User License Agreement 150 |
| Using collision effects20 |
| V |
| Video based screen saver proiect |
| Create 125 |
| Video based screen saver project |
| Video file |
| Save |
| Video file |
| Video screensaver71 |
| W |
| Why |
| Photoshon® nlug-in 164 |
| 104 ₩/by |
| Work efficiently 73 |
| work enderning |

226